

LEARN TO READ LATIN

SECOND EDITION

V O C A B U L A R Y
Unit 1: Chapter I-VI

Andrew Keller
Collegiate School

Stephanie Russell
Collegiate School

Yale UNIVERSITY PRESS New Haven & London

CHAPTER I

Vocabulary

- agricola, agricolae** *m.* farmer
- **anima, animae** *f.* life force; soul¹
- dea, deae** *f.* goddess
- **fāma, fāmae** *f.* report, rumor; reputation, fame
- fēmina, fēminae** *f.* woman; wife
- filia, filiae** *f.* daughter
- īnsula, īnsulae** *f.* island
- Italia, Italiae** *f.* Italy
- nauta, nautae** *m.* sailor
- patria, patriae** *f.* country, homeland
- pecūnia, pecūniae** *f.* money
- poēta, poētae** *m.* poet
- puella, puellae** *f.* girl
- rēgīna, rēgīnae** *f.* queen
- via, viae** *f.* way, road, street, path
- ager, agrī** *m.* field
- **deus, deī** *m.* god
- **dominus, dominī** *m.* master, lord
- filius, filiī** *m.* son
- gladius, gladiī** *m.* sword
- liber, librī** *m.* book
- puer, puerī** *m.* boy
- servus, servī** *m.* slave
- vir, virī** *m.* man; husband
- aurum, aurī** *n.* gold
- bellum, bellī** *n.* war
- **cōsilium, cōsiliī** *n.* deliberation; plan, advice; judgment
- dōnum, dōnī** *n.* gift
- factum, factī** *n.* deed
- **ferrum, ferrī** *n.* iron; sword
- oppidum, oppidī** *n.* town
- perīculum, perīculī** *n.* danger
- verbum, verbī** *n.* word
- **ā, ab** (prep. + abl.) (away) from
- **ad** (prep. + acc.) toward, to
- cum** (prep. + abl.) with
- **dē** (prep. + abl.) (down) from; about, concerning
- **ē, ex** (prep. + abl.) (out) from
- **et** (conj.) and;
- et . . . et . . .** both . . . and . . .
- (adv.) even, also
- **in** (prep. + acc.) into, onto; against
- (prep. + abl.) in, on
- ō** (interj.) O
- **-que** (enclitic conj.) and

1. An arrow next to a vocabulary entry indicates that there is additional important information about this entry in the **vocabulary notes** that follow.

Vocabulary Notes

- **anima, animae** *f.* has a physical meaning, the “breath” of the wind or of a human being. By extension, it may mean the breath of life, the force that gives an animate being life (life force). **anima** is used of the part of a human being that departs from the dead body and journeys to another life in the underworld.
- **fāma, fāmae** *f.* derives from an Indo-European root that means “speak” (cf. Gk. *phēmí*; Skt. *bhāsh*, speak). The word **fāma** indicates primarily what is spoken publicly or by the people, and its basic meaning is “talk” or “rumor.” A **fāma** often told becomes a “story,” and when it is passed down from generation to generation, it becomes a “tradition.” A person’s **fāma** is his or her “reputation” or “fame.” This may be positive or negative. Finally, if the word is capitalized, **Fāma** is the goddess Rumor.
- **deus, deī** *m.* has certain common irregular forms in the plural. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING DECLENSION:

Nom./Voc.	deus	dī
Gen.	deī	deōrum or deum
Dat.	deō	dīs
Acc.	deum	deōs
Abl.	deō	dīs

There is no vocative singular of **deus**. Other, less common forms of the nominative/vocative plural are **deī** and **dīi**. A less common form of the dative/ablative plural is **deīs**.

- The noun **dominus, dominī** *m.* is **cognate** with the Latin word for house (**domus**); that is, the two words **dominus** and **domus** are descended from the same linguistic root. The original meaning of **dominus** was “master of the house.”
- **cōsiliū, cōsiliī** *n.* may mean the act of deliberating about something (deliberation), or it may mean the “plan” or “intention” that results from deliberating. It may also mean the capacity to deliberate (judgment). Finally, it may refer to a group of people who deliberate, a “council.”
- **ferum, ferī** *n.* means “iron.” By the rhetorical device **metonymy** (change of name) it also means “sword”—that is, something made of iron.

Prepositions

A preposition (< **praepōnō**, place before) is a word placed before a noun or pronoun to show its relation to another word in the sentence. The preposition and the noun or pronoun together are called a “prepositional phrase.” In Latin, prepositions are most often followed by one of two cases, the accusative or the ablative. Prepositions that require a noun in the accusative case are said to “take the accusative” and are marked in the vocabulary entry by the notation (*prep. + acc.*). Prepositions that require a noun in the ablative case are similarly said to “take the ablative” and are marked by the notation (*prep. + abl.*).

Prepositions that take the accusative emphasize the idea of motion toward, into, around, and through. Prepositions that take the ablative indicate one of the three functions of the ablative (separation, association/instrument, location). A few prepositions can take either case, and *their meanings differ according to which case they take.*

- The prepositions **ā/ab**, **ē/ex**, and **dē** all require a noun in the ablative case and express separation (from). However, they have distinct differences in meaning. **ā/ab** expresses motion *away* from a place; **ē/ex** expresses motion *out* from a place; **dē** expresses motion *down* from a place. These differences in meaning are illustrated in the diagram that follows.
- **ab** is used before words beginning with vowels or **h-**. Both **ā** and **ab** are used before words beginning with consonants, but **ā** is more frequent.
- **ex** is used before words beginning with vowels or **h-**. Both **ē** and **ex** are used before words beginning with consonants, but **ex** is more frequent.
- **ad** takes the accusative and expresses motion to or toward a place. Compare the meaning of **ad** with that of **in** (+ acc.) in the diagram that follows.
- **in** may take either the accusative or the ablative case. When it takes the accusative, it means “into” or “onto.” By extension of this meaning it may also mean “against,” especially when the noun in the accusative case refers to a person or people. When it takes the ablative case, it expresses location and means either “in” or “on.” These differences in meaning are illustrated in the diagram that follows.

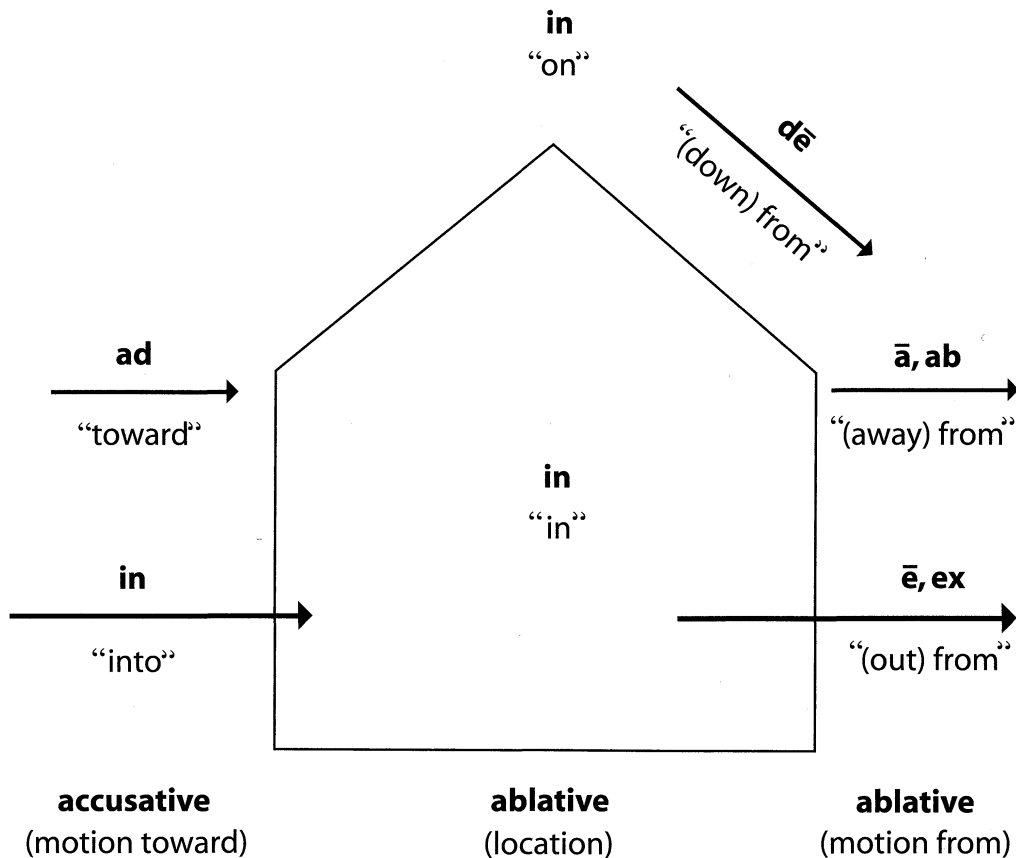


Figure 2. Prepositions

- **et** is a **coordinating conjunction**. This means that it connects only parallel or grammatically balanced words, phrases, or clauses. When two nouns are connected, they must be in the same case: for example, **nautārum et agricolārum** (of the sailors and of the farmers [genitive]). Parts of speech other than nouns may also be connected by **et**. For example, in the phrases "tall and snow-covered," "he sings and he dances," "in Italy and in Gaul," **et** could again be used to connect two adjectives, two verb phrases, or two prepositional phrases.

To emphasize the strict balance of elements that are to be joined in Latin, **et** is often used to mark *each element*: **et nautārum et agricolārum**, "both of the sailors and of the farmers." It is convenient to translate the first **et** with the English word "both." When such a parallel series is longer than two (**et nautārum et agricolārum et poētārum**), the first **et** is not translated (of the sailors and of the farmers and of the poets).

et may also be used as an *adverb* that usually qualifies a single word (noun, verb, adjective): **et vir**, "even the man," "the man also."

- **-que** is an **enclitic conjunction**. The word **enclitic** is derived from the Greek verb *enklīnō* (lean on), and an enclitic *leans on* or is directly attached to the word preceding it. The hyphen before **que** indicates that *it cannot stand alone as a separate word*. **-que** is attached to the second element of a closely related pair, whose elements are often opposite or complementary. **-que** should be translated "and" before the word to which it is attached: for example, **vir fēminaque** (husband *and* wife [subjects]). Like **et**, **-que** may connect grammatical elements other than nouns.

-que is used in place of the first **et** in the phrase **et . . . et . . .** by certain prose stylists (the historians Livy, Sallust, and Tacitus) and by many poets. Caesar and Cicero never use **-que . . . et . . .** The use of **-que . . . -que . . .** is found only in poetry and occasionally in the historians.

Derivatives and Cognates

Many words in English are *derived from* Latin words; that is, they descend directly from words in Latin. Such words are called **derivatives**. For example, the English word “counsel” is a derivative of the Latin word **cōnsilium**. In many instances, the differences in sound and spelling between an English word and its Latin parent are not significant enough to obscure the fact that the two words are related. Some English derivatives descend from the roots of Latin words. A **root** is the basic element or ultimate stem of a word that carries its meaning and from which many other words are made by the addition of prefixes and suffixes.

When an English and a Latin word are called **cognates** (< **cognātus**, -a, -um, related), they are related because they both descend from a common PIE word or root, but the English word is derived not from Latin but from another ancient language such as Greek. It is often impossible to tell that a word in Latin and a word in English are cognates because they have undergone radically different changes in pronunciation and spelling as they have developed in their respective language families. For example, the Latin word **quīnque** (five) is cognate with the English word “five,” but the words do not appear to be related.

In each chapter some English derivatives and cognates of the new Latin vocabulary are listed at the end of the vocabulary notes. These lists are intended in part to help the student remember the meanings of new vocabulary items. They will also help the student expand his or her English vocabulary and stimulate further interest in learning about the relations among words. The cognates are provided to show how the same root or word in PIE has given rise to a wide variety of seemingly unrelated words in English. Where only the root of an English word is related to the corresponding Latin word, the portion of the English word that descends from that root is boldfaced.²

	Derivatives	Cognates
ager	agrarian	acre
anima	animate	
bellum	bellicose	
cōnsilium	counsel	
dea, deus	deity	July
dominus	dominate	
factum	fact	thesis
fāma	famous	prophet; banal
fīlia, fīlius	affiliate	
īnsula	insulate; isolate	
liber	library	
nauta	nautical	astronaut; nausea
pecūnia	pecuniary	fee
perīculum	peril	fear; pirate
puella, puer	puerile	foal; encyclopedia
rēgīna	correct, regent	maharajah; right; rich
verbum	verb	word; irony
via	trivial, deviate	way; weigh
vir	virile, virtue	werewolf; world

2. For further information on these and other derivatives and cognates, consult the Indo-European Roots Appendix of the *American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. (Houghton-Mifflin, 2006).

CHAPTER II

Vocabulary

- cūra, cūrae *f.* care, concern; anxiety
- ira, irae *f.* anger, wrath
- poena, poenae *f.* punishment, penalty
- sapientia, sapientiae *f.* wisdom
- vīta, vītae *f.* life

- animus, animī *m.* (rational) soul, mind; spirit; *pl.*, strong feelings
- arma, armōrum *n. pl.* arms, weapons
- studium, studiī *n.* zeal, enthusiasm; pursuit, study
- vēlum, vēlī *n.* sail

- ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum (1-intr.) walk
- amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus (1-tr.) love
- cōgitō (1-tr.) think; ponder
- dō, dare, dedī, datus give, grant
 - poenās dare (idiom) to pay the penalty
 - vēla dare (idiom) to set sail
- dōnō (1-tr.) give; present, reward
- errō (1-intr.) wander; err, make a mistake
- labōrō (1-intr.) work; suffer, be distressed
- mōnstrō (1-tr.) show, point out
- optō (1-tr.) desire
- vocō (1-tr.) call; summon; name

- dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus owe; ought
- habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus have, hold; consider
- iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus order
- moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus set in motion, stir (up), move
- respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsus answer, respond
- timeō, timēre, timuī, — fear, be afraid (of)
- videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus see

- sum, esse, fuī, futūrus be; exist
- possum, posse, potuī, — be able, can

- cūr (interrog. adv.) why
- enim (postpositive conj.) in fact, indeed; for
- etenim (conj.) and indeed; for in fact
- nam (conj.) for
- namque (conj.) for in fact
- -ne (interrog. enclitic particle) *added to the first word of a question*
- neque or nec (conj.-adv.) and not
neque/nec . . . neque/nec . . .
neither . . . nor . . .
- nōn (adv.) not
- sed (conj.) but

Vocabulary Notes

- ▶ When *īra* appears in the plural, it may be translated “(feelings of) anger.”
- ▶ **animus, animī** *m.* is the “(rational) soul” or “mind” of a human being. It is distinct from **anima**, which is the physical soul, that part of a human that would descend to the underworld. By comparison, Greek and English have one word, *psychē* and “soul” respectively, that is used for both. **animus** may also mean “heart” as the source of emotion and passion, or it may indicate a specific passion. In the plural, it often means “spirits” in the sense of “strong feelings,” and in certain contexts “anger,” “courage,” or “pride.”
- ▶ The second-declension noun **arma, armōrum** *n. pl.* never appears in the singular in Latin. The vocabulary entry is given in the plural but is analogous in other respects to any other vocabulary entry for a noun: it gives the nominative, the genitive, the gender, and the meaning(s) of the word. All such entries also indicate that the word listed is plural.

Principal Parts

As is explained in §7, the fourth principal part of a verb is usually the perfect passive participle of that verb. In this book, two different endings of the perfect passive participle—**-us** and **-um**—are used in the vocabulary lists beginning each chapter. Verbs that are *transitive*—that express an action that is directly exerted on a person or thing—have a fourth principal part ending in **-us**. Verbs that are *intransitive*—that express an action that is not directly exerted on a person or thing—have a fourth principal part ending in **-um**. For more on the distinction between transitive and intransitive verbs, see §11.

Certain intransitive verbs have no perfect passive participle. For some intransitive verbs a future active participle, whose ending is **-ūrus**, is supplied as the fourth principal part. This is true, for example, for the irregular intransitive verb **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**. The fourth principal part, **futūrus**, is a future active participle.

Certain verbs, both transitive and intransitive, have no fourth principal part at all.¹ When memorizing and reciting aloud such verbs, say “blank” for the missing fourth principal part.

- ▶ Most verbs of the first conjugation have principal parts that follow the pattern of **ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum** (an intransitive verb) or **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus** (a transitive verb). Verbs whose second, third, and fourth principal parts end in **-āre, -āvī, -ātus** are identified in the vocabulary list by the notation (1-tr.) following the first principal part. Verbs whose second, third, and fourth principal parts end in **-āre, -āvī, -ātum** are identified in the vocabulary list by the notation (1-intr.). No other principal parts are listed for these verbs. However, when learning verbs of this conjugation, ALWAYS WRITE OUT AND/OR SAY ALL FOUR PRINCIPAL PARTS. For example, **optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus**, not **optō** (1-tr.).
- ▶ **cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātus** takes two grammatical constructions. It takes a direct object, or it may also be used with the preposition **dē**.

Animam cōgitat.
Dē animā cōgitat.

She is pondering the soul.
She is thinking about the soul.

- ▶ **dō, dare, dedī, datus** is an irregular first-conjugation verb because its principal parts do not follow the pattern of other first-conjugation verbs, and its present stem, **da-**, contains a *short -a-*. However, two forms have **-ā-**: the second person singular present active indicative (**dās**) and the second person singular present active imperative (**dā**). (For the indicative see §9; for the imperative see §32.) MEMORIZE THESE FORMS. The third principal part, **dedī**, is called **reduplicated** because the first consonant of the root, **d-**, has been doubled with an intervening vowel. Like all verbs of *giving, showing, and telling*, **dō** regularly takes both a direct object and an indirect object.
- ▶ Two common idioms using **dō** are **poenās dare**, “to pay the penalty,” and **vēla dare**, “to set sail.” An **idiom** is an expression whose meaning cannot be rendered by a literal translation. Idioms are included in the vocabulary lists with their verbs in the infinitive. MEMORIZE EACH IDIOM AS A SEPARATE VOCABULARY ENTRY.

Nutae poenās dabunt.
Nutae vēla nōn dant.

The sailors will pay the penalty.
The sailors are not setting sail.

1. A missing fourth principal part indicates that no forms derived from this part occur in the Latin that has survived.

- **dōnō, dōnāre, dōnāvī, dōnātus** is a denominative verb. The term **denominative** is used of verbs that are derived from nouns or adjectives. The verb **dōnō** is derived from the noun **dōnum, dōnī n.** Two constructions regularly occur with this verb.

Poetae pecūniam dōnāmus.	We are giving the poet money. We are giving money to the poet.
Poetam pecūniā dōnāmus.	We are rewarding the poet with (by means of) money.

In the first sentence **dōnō** functions as an ordinary verb of *giving, showing, and telling* and takes a direct object and an indirect object. In this usage **dōnō** is a synonym of **dō**. In the second sentence **dōnō** means “present” or “reward” with a *person* as an Accusative, Direct Object and an Ablative of Means.

- **mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus** is a verb of *giving, showing, and telling* and thus takes both a direct object and an indirect object.
- **optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus** may take a direct object or an Object Infinitive (§13).

Cum agricolis labōrāre optat.	He desires to work with the farmers.
-------------------------------	--------------------------------------

- **vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus** means “call” both in the sense of “summon” and in the sense of “name.” In the latter sense, it takes a direct object and another noun called a **Predicate Accusative**.

Patriam insulam vocō.	I call the island (d.o.) (my) homeland (Predicate Accusative).
-----------------------	--

- The verb **dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus** has two distinct meanings. When it takes a direct object, it is translated “owe.” When it is followed by a Complementary Infinitive, it is translated “ought” (§12).

Poetae pecūniam dēbeō.	I owe money to the poet.
Labōrāre dēbeō.	I ought to work.

To translate the past and future tenses of **dēbeō** with a Complementary Infinitive, use the English verb “have.”

Labōrāre dēbebam.	I had (was having) to work.
Labōrāre dēbebō.	I shall have to work.

- **iubeō, iubere, iussī, iussus** frequently takes an Object Infinitive (§13), most often with a subject of the infinitive in the accusative case (§107). This accusative is translated as if it were a direct object of the form of **iubeō**.

Rēgīna nautam labōrāre iubet.	The queen orders the sailor to work.
-------------------------------	--------------------------------------

- **moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus** means “set (something or someone) in motion,” either physically or emotionally.
- **respondeō, respondere, respondi, respōnsus** takes a Dative of Indirect Object to express the person whom one answers (to whom one responds).

Respondēbis fēminae?	Will you answer the woman? Will you respond to the woman?
----------------------	--

- **timeō, timēre, timuī**, — lacks a fourth principal part and thus lacks the tenses formed from this principal part. MEMORIZE THE BLANK IN PLACE OF A FOURTH PRINCIPAL PART. **timeō** is transitive but may be used absolutely (§11). It may be accompanied by a Dative of Reference or by the preposition **dē** (as well as by other prepositions).

Agricola timet.	The farmer is afraid.
Agricola rēgīnam timet.	The farmer fears the queen.
Agricola rēgīnae timet.	The farmer fears for the queen.
Agricola dē filiō timet.	The farmer is afraid about (his) son.

- The principal parts of the irregular verb **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus** derive from two different PIE roots, ***Ees-**, “be; exist” (the root for the first two principal parts) and ***bheu-**, “be, exist, grow” (for the third and fourth

principal parts).² The fourth principal part, **futūrus** (about to be), is the future active participle. **sum** has two different uses but is always intransitive. For the conjugation and uses of **sum** see §10.

- **possum, posse, potuī**, — is an intransitive verb that is regularly followed by a Complementary Infinitive (§12). It lacks a fourth principal part and thus lacks the tenses formed from this principal part. MEMORIZE THE BLANK IN PLACE OF A FOURTH PRINCIPAL PART. For the conjugation of **possum** see §10.
- **enim** is called a **postpositive** conjunction (< **postpōnō**, put after) because it is regularly *placed after* the first word (or second word) in a sentence. **enim** is used to join two sentences or clauses when the second sentence or clause explains (for) or confirms (in fact, indeed) a preceding one.

Rēgīna ad oppidum ambulat. Dōna enim dīs dare optat. (*enim* with explanation)
The queen is walking to the town. *For* she desires to give gifts to the gods.
Agricola vēla dare optat. Nihil enim timet. (*enim* with confirmation)
The farmer desires to set sail. *Indeed*, he is afraid of nothing.

enim is never placed first in a Latin sentence, but it is nearly always the first word in an English translation.

- **nam** is another conjunction used to join two sentences or clauses when the second sentence or clause explains a preceding one. Unlike **enim**, **nam** is not postpositive.

Rēgīna ad oppidum ambulat. Nam dōna dīs dare optat.
The queen is walking to the town. *For* she desires to give gifts to the gods.

- **-ne** is an enclitic³ added to the first word of a sentence to indicate that it is a question. Its use in questions is *optional*, and it has no English translation. The word to which it is added is often a verb, since verbs often occur first in questions, but **-ne** may be added to other words as well.

Optāsne rēgīnam īnsulae vidēre? Do you desire to see the queen of the island?
Rēgīnamne īnsulae vidēre optās? Do you desire to see the queen of the island?

- **neque** or **nec** is a conjunction (and) *and* an adverb (not) at the same time.

Vir pugnat nec dē periculō cōgitat. The man fights and does not think about danger.

neque . . . neque . . . , nec . . . nec . . ., or a mixture of the two mark balanced pairs and is translated “neither . . . nor . . .”

Nec fēminae nec virō dōnum dabō. Neither to the woman nor to the man shall I give a gift.

When a parallel series is longer than two (**nec fēminae nec virō nec rēgīnae**), translate the first **nec** as “not” and say “and not” for the others (not to the woman and not to the man and not to the queen).

- **nōn** (adv.) almost always precedes the word it emphasizes.

Agricola dōna nōn optat. The farmer does not desire gifts.
Agricola agrum, nōn pecūniam, optat. The farmer desires a field, not money.

	Derivatives	Cognates
ambulō	somnambulist	
cūra	curious	
dō	donative; pardon	antidote; dose
habeō	habit; able	give; gavel
īra	irate	iron; hierarchy
moveō	mobile; emotion	
possum	possible; potent	despot; Padishah
sapientia	insipid; savant; savvy	
sum, esse	interest; absent; essence	am; is; yes; sin
fuī, futūrus	future	be; build; physics
videō	vision; visage; voyeur	guide; wise; idol
vīta	vital	bio-; quick; hygiene; whiskey
vocō	vocal; invoke; vowel	epic

2. An asterisk next to a form indicates that the form is hypothetical.

3. See the vocabulary note on **-que** (p. 13).

CHAPTER III

Vocabulary

- diligentia, diligentiae** *f.* diligence
- **incola, incolae** *m.* inhabitant
 - mora, morae** *f.* delay
 - **prōvincia, prōvinciae** *f.* province
 - terra, terrae** *f.* land, earth
- **amīcus, amīcī** *m.* friend
- **forum, forī** *n.* public square, marketplace, forum
- **imperium, imperiī** *n.* power, authority, command; empire
- **inimīcus, inimīcī** *m.* (personal) enemy
- odium, odiī** *n.* hatred
- **populus, populī** *m.* (the) people; populace
- **Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Romans
- **nihil** or **nīl** (indeclinable noun) *n.* nothing
- laudō** (1-tr.) praise
- **pugnō** (1-intr.) fight
- superō** (1-tr.) overcome, conquer; surpass
- **teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus** hold, grasp; keep, possess; occupy
- videō, vidēre, vīdī, visus** *passive*, be seen; seem (§26)
- eō, ire, iī/ivī, itum** go (§21)
- **amīcus, -a, -um** friendly (+ dat.)
- **inimīcus, -a, -um** unfriendly, hostile (+ dat.)
- bonus, -a, -um** good
- **laetus, -a, -um** happy
- **liber, libera, liberum** free
- **magnus, -a, -um** large, big; great
- malus, -a, -um** bad, evil
- miser, misera, miserum** wretched, pitiable, miserable
- multus, -a, -um** much, many
- parvus, -a, -um** small, little
- **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum** beautiful, handsome
- Rōmānus, -a, -um** Roman
- ā, ab** (prep. + abl.) by (§25)
- **atque** or **ac** (conj.) and (also)
- **mox** (adv.) soon; then
- nunc** (adv.) now
- **prō** (prep. + abl.) in front of; on behalf of, for; in return for, instead of
- propter** (prep. + acc.) on account of, because of
- semper** (adv.) always
- sine** (prep. + abl.) without

Vocabulary Notes

- **incola, incolae** *m.* appears as a feminine noun in a few passages in Latin literature.
- **prōvincia, prōvinciae** *f.* is the term applied to a legally defined territory outside of Italy that was acquired by the Romans and made part of their *imperium*. The first Roman province was **Sicilia, Siciliae** *f.* Sicily.
- **amīcus, amīcī** *m.* and **inimīcus, inimīcī** *m.* are substantives of the adjectives **amīcus, -a, -um** and **inimīcus, -a, -um** (§19). These and certain other common substantives require their own vocabulary entries.
- **forum, forī** *n.* refers to the center of a town where business, politics, entertainment, and public life take place. The Roman forum (**Forum Rōmānum**) housed the law courts and many major temples.
- **imperium, imperīi** *n.* may mean simply a “command,” “order,” or the “authority” that a person in power has to give a command. When a Roman general or legate was sent to a province in order to govern, he was given **imperium**—that is, “power” or “authority”—over that province. By extension from these specific cases the word came to mean “supreme power,” and finally, in the Imperial period, it came to be the word used to describe the “empire.”
- **inimīcus, inimīcī** *m.* means a “personal enemy” as opposed to a public or political enemy.
- **populus, populī** *m.* is a **collective noun**, a noun that denotes a collection of persons regarded as a single entity. If it is used in the plural, it refers to several peoples.

Populus Rōmānus nōn timet.
Dī populōs Italiae amant.

The Roman populace is (people are) not afraid.
The gods love the peoples (populaces) of Italy.

- **Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum** *m. pl.* is a substantive of the adjective **Rōmānus, -a, -um**. Although **Rōmānī** is masculine, it may refer to a group of mixed gender.
- **nihil** is an *indeclinable neuter singular* noun. A noun that is **indeclinable** lacks case endings and has only one form. **nihil** may perform only the functions of the nominative or the accusative case. **nīl** is a contracted form of **nihil**: the **-h-** has dropped out, and the two **-i-**'s have contracted into one **-ī-**.
- **pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātum** is an intransitive verb. It often takes an Ablative of Accompaniment that indicates the person *against* whom one is fighting.

Servī cum dominīs pugnāt.

The slaves are fighting with (= against) the masters.

- **teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus** may mean “hold” something in one’s hands or “grasp” something with one’s intellect. It has an accessory idea of maintaining possession of something once held or grasped. It may also mean “occupy” in the sense of holding to one’s place of habitation.

Adjectives

- Most first-second-declension adjectives have masculine, feminine, and neuter singular nominative forms that follow exactly the pattern of **amīcus, amīca, amīcum**. Thus they are given in the vocabulary list in a shortened form (e.g., **inimīcus, -a, -um**). However, when learning new adjectives, ALWAYS WRITE OUT ADJECTIVE ENTRIES IN FULL (e.g., **inimīcus, inimīca, inimīcum**). Adjectives that do not follow this pattern are written out in full in the vocabulary lists.

Both **amīcus, -a, -um** and **inimīcus, -a, -um** are often found with a Dative of Reference that indicates the *person to whom* someone is friendly or unfriendly. The dative is often found between the adjective and the noun that it modifies.

Rēgīna amīca dōnum virō dōnat.
Rēgīna animam virīs inimīcam habet.

The friendly queen is giving a gift to the man.
The queen has a soul hostile to men.

- **inimīcus, -a, -um** is a compound adjective formed by the addition of the prefix **in-** (not) to **amīcus**.
- The most common meaning for **laetus, -a, -um** in all periods of Latin literature is “happy,” but when it describes plants, crops, or soil, it may mean “flourishing” or “fertile.” The same word is used metaphorically of literary or oratorical style, in which context its closest English equivalents are “rich” or “luxuriant.” When it describes omens or weather, **laetus** often carries the notion of “favorable” or “propitious.”

Laetī sunt nautae.
Agrōs laetōs agricolae vidēō.

The sailors are happy.
I see the flourishing fields of the farmer.

- ▶ **liber, libera, liberum** means “free” both in a general sense (unrestrained, open) and in a social sense (free as opposed to enslaved).
- ▶ **magnus, -a, -um** has a quantitative sense (big, large) and a qualitative sense (great).
- ▶ The stem of **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum** is **pulchr-** and thus, for example, the masculine singular genitive is **pulchrī**. Latin does not distinguish between “handsome” and “beautiful”; the adjective is used equally of men and women.
- ▶ **atque** and its alternate form **ac** are coordinating conjunctions. They connect a more particular or emphatic element or clause to what has gone before and thus may sometimes be translated “and (also).” **atque** or **ac** also may introduce a new point or aspect to a subject already under discussion. While there is no difference in meaning between the two words, **atque** is used before words beginning with vowels and words that begin with **h-**. Both are used before words beginning with consonants.
- ▶ The basic meaning of the adverb **mox** is “soon.” By extension from this basic meaning it may mean “then” to mark the next in a series of events or actions.

Poēta in viam ambulat. *Mox* rēgīnam vidēbit.

The poet is walking into the street. *Soon* he will see the queen.

Poēta iram virōrum cōgitābit, *mox* deōrum.

The poet will ponder the anger of men, *then* [the anger] of the gods.

- ▶ The preposition **prō** has several distinct meanings illustrated in the following sentences:

Est via *prō* oppidō.

There is a street *in front of* the town.

Prō filiīs labōrat.

He works *on behalf of* (his) sons.

Prō factis poenās dabit.

He will pay the penalty *in return for* (*in exchange for*) (his) deeds.

	Derivatives	Cognates
bonus	bonanza; boon	
forum	foreign, forensic	door
imperium	imperial	
malus	malice; malady	
nihil	nihilistic; annihilate	
pugnō	pugnacious; impugn	pygmy
teneō	obtain; tenet; tenacious	tendon; tone
terra	territory	toast; thirst

CHAPTER IV

Vocabulary

- ▶ **causa, causae** *f.* reason, cause; case
- ▶ **glōria, glōriae** *f.* renown, glory
- ▶ **invidia, invidiae** *f.* envy, jealousy; ill-will, resentment
- ▶ **sententia, sententiae** *f.* thought, feeling; opinion

- ▶ **altum, altī** *n.* deep sea; height
- ▶ **auxilium, auxiliī** *n.* aid, help
 - ▶ **auxilia, auxiliōrum** *n. pl.* auxiliary troops
- ▶ **caelum, caelī** *n.* sky, heaven
- ▶ **socius, sociī** *m.* ally, comrade

- ego, meī** (personal pron.) I; me (§38)
- nōs, nostrum/nostrī** (personal pron.) we; us (§38)
- tū, tuī** (personal pron.) you (§38)
- vōs, vestrum/vestrī** (personal pron.) you (pl.) (§38)
- is, ea, id** (personal pron.) he, she, it; they; him, her, it; them (§38)

- ▶ **agō, agere, ēgī, āctus** drive; do; spend, conduct
 - causam agere** (idiom) to plead a case
- ▶ **canō, canere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of)
- ▶ **capīō, capere, cēpī, captus** take (up), capture; win
 - cōnsilium capere** (idiom) to form a plan
- ▶ **dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus** say, speak, tell
- ▶ **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus** lead; consider
- ▶ **facīō, facere, fēcī, factus** make; do

- ▶ **gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus** bear; manage, conduct; perform
 - bellum gerere** (idiom) to wage war
- ▶ **mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus** send
- ▶ **pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus** put, place; set aside
 - regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus** rule, control
 - scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptus** write

- ▶ **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus** hear, listen (to)
- ▶ **sentīō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus** perceive; feel
- ▶ **veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum** come

- is, ea, id** (demonstr. adj.) this, that; these, those (§38)

- altus, -a, -um** tall, high; deep
- ▶ **clārus, -a, -um** bright, clear; famous
- ▶ **cupīdus, -a, -um** desirous (+ gen.)
- meus, -a, -um** my, mine (§39)
- noster, nostra, nostrum** our, ours (§39)
- ▶ **paucī, paucae, pauca** few
- socius, -a, -um** allied
- tuus, -a, -um** your, yours (§39)
- validus, -a, -um** strong; healthy
- vester, vestra, vestrum** your (pl.), yours (pl.) (§39)

- ▶ **per** (prep. + acc.) through; by
- ▶ **quidem** (postpositive adv.) indeed, certainly; at least
 - ▶ **equidem** (adv.) indeed, certainly; for my part
 - ▶ **nē . . . quidem** not even

Vocabulary Notes

- The noun **causa**, **causae** *f.* has a general meaning of “reason” or “cause” and a more particular meaning of legal “case.”
- **sententia**, **sententiae** *f.* is derived from the verb **sentīō** and refers to an opinion, either privately held (thought, feeling) or publicly given (vote, opinion). In the former sense, it may refer to the meaning underlying a speech or an expression. In the latter sense, it may mean the “judgment” or “sentence” of a court. It may also refer to a written or spoken “sentence.”
- **altum**, **altī** *n.* is a substantive of the adjective **altus**, **-a**, **-um** and may mean either “deep sea” or “height.”
- **auxilium**, **auxiliī** *n.* is an **abstract noun**, a noun that denotes something that cannot be perceived by the senses (e.g., wisdom, happiness, slavery). The plural of an abstract noun in Latin is often used with a concrete meaning. Thus, in military contexts, the plural of **auxilium**—**auxilia**, **auxiliōrum** *n. pl.*—means “auxiliary troops,” troops of allied soldiers, not citizens.
- **socius**, **sociī** *m.* is a substantive of the adjective **socius**, **-a**, **-um**. It is used both in personal contexts (comrade) and in legal and political ones (ally). It is often used of cities or peoples from outside Italy that were allies of Rome.
- **agō**, **agere**, **ēgī**, **āctus** is a verb describing action generally, its particular meanings being derived from context and from the specific direct objects accompanying the verb. It may mean “drive” (cattle, goats, plunder, a chariot, the winds); “do,” “act,” “manage,” “plead” (a court case); or “spend,” “conduct” (time, life).
- **canō**, **canere**, **cecini**, **cantus** is a transitive verb and thus takes a direct object. The third principal part, **cecini**, is reduplicated (cf. **dedī**).

Poēta bellum canēbat.

The poet was singing of war.

The translation includes the preposition “of” because this is the common English expression. In Latin the direct object of this verb is always accusative.

- In the third principal part of **capiō**, **capere**, **cēpi**, **captus**, the root vowel changes to a long **-ē-**. The change of the vowel indicates a change in tense. A change in root vowel that corresponds to a change in meaning is called **ablaut**. This phenomenon is common to all PIE languages. Cf. English **sing**, **sang**, **sung**; **song**.
- **dīcō**, **dīcere**, **dīxi**, **dictus** is a verb of *giving*, *showing*, and *telling* and thus may take a direct object and an indirect object.
- **dūcō**, **dūcere**, **dūxi**, **ductus** has a concrete and an abstract meaning: “lead” and “consider.”
- In the third principal part of **faciō**, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factus**, the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to **-ē-** (cf. **capiō**). **faciō** is a transitive verb that means “make,” “do.” “Make” includes ideas of creating, causing, or representing something. “Do” means perform or carry out an action, a deed, a crime, orders, etc. In the passive voice of the present system, **faciō** has irregular forms made from the verb **fiō** (§126). Until these forms are learned, synopses of **faciō** should include active forms only.
- **gerō**, **gerere**, **gessi**, **gestus** has three distinct meanings: 1. “bear” or “carry” (equipment, clothing); 2. “have” or “bear” as a permanent or temporary feature of body or mind (wounds, reputation, anger); or 3. “manage,” “conduct,” or “perform” (oneself, business, political office). The first of these three meanings is found only in poetry.
- In the third principal part of **mittō**, **mittere**, **mīsī**, **missus**, the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to **-ī-**. **mittō** is regularly found with two constructions indicating the recipient: **ad** + accusative or a Dative of Reference.

Agricola ad filium pecūniam mittit.

The farmer sends money to (his) son.

Agricola filiō pecūniam mittit.

The farmer sends money to (his) son.

When **mittō** is accompanied by **ad** + accusative, the prepositional phrase emphasizes motion toward someone or something. With a Dative of Reference, the person for whom something is meant is emphasized (i.e., The farmer sends money meant for his son).

- **pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positus** has two distinct meanings: “put,” “place,” or “set aside.” Compare the following sentences:

Incolae arma in oppidō pōnunt.

The inhabitants are placing weapons in the town.

Incolae arma pōnunt.

The inhabitants are setting aside (their) weapons.

Context usually makes clear which meaning is appropriate.

- **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus** is a transitive verb that may be used absolutely. When it takes a direct object, it may be translated either “hear” or “listen to.” When it is used absolutely, it may be translated either “hear” or “listen.”

Rēgīna incolās audit.	The queen listens to/hears the inhabitants.
Rēgīna audit.	The queen listens/hears.

- In the third principal part of **sentīō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus**, the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to **-ē-**. The **-ē-** in the fourth principal part is long before **-ns-**. A SHORT VOWEL BEFORE **-ns-** ALWAYS BECOMES LONG (e.g., **īnsula**). The basic meaning of **sentīō** is “perceive through one of the senses.” Thus it has an intellectual sense (perceive, observe, notice) and a more physical or emotional sense (experience, feel, suffer).
- In the third principal part of **veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum**, the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to **-ē-**. **veniō** is an intransitive verb.
- The basic meaning of **clārus, -a, -um** is the visual idea of “bright” or “clear.” In this sense, it regularly describes such things as sky, color, or lightning. It has a transferred sense of “evident” or “manifest” when describing more abstract concepts (plans, affairs). When applied to people, it means “famous” or “distinguished.”
- **cupīdus, -a, -um** is an adjective often found with an Objective Genitive (§36).
- Because the adjective **paucī, paucae, pauca** means “few,” it appears only in the plural, and its vocabulary entry includes the masculine, feminine, and neuter plural nominative forms. The stem is **pauc-**. This word often appears with a Partitive Genitive (§34).
- **per** is a preposition that takes the accusative case and expresses motion “through” space or time. It may also be translated “throughout” or “along.” **per** also expresses ideas of means or agency (often with personal pronouns) and may sometimes be translated “by.”

Per viās oppidī ambulābimus.	We shall walk through the streets of the town.
Sententia populī per bonōs mōnstrātur.	The opinion of the people is being shown through (by) the good men.
Oppidum per arma tenēbant.	They were holding the town through (by) arms.

- **quidem** is a postpositive adverb that usually emphasizes (indeed, certainly) or limits (at least) the word immediately preceding it.

Pulchrum quidem est amāre.	Beautiful indeed it is to love. (emphasizes)
Mihi quidem malum est bellum.	To me at least war is bad. (limits)

quidem can also emphasize or limit an entire sentence.

- **equidem** (the particle **e-** + **quidem**) is an adverb that usually occurs with a verb in the first person singular or plural. It is used to emphasize something about oneself or to affirm one’s own opinion. **equidem** is not postpositive.

Equidem prō patriā pugnābō.	I for my part shall fight for the country.
------------------------------------	--

- **nē . . . quidem** is translated “not even” and surrounds the word or words being qualified.

Rēgīna nē filiō quidem aurum dat.	The queen is giving gold not even to (her) son.
--	---

	Derivatives	Cognates
agō	act, agent	agony; pedagogue; protagonist; axiom
auxilium	auxiliary	wax
caelum	celestial	
canō	cantata; chant, incentive	hen
capiō	capture; perceive; municipal	have; haven; hawk; gaff
clārus	calendar; declare	low; hale
decem	December; decimal; dime; dozen	seventeen; dean; decade; ten
dīcō	dictate; ditto; ditty	token; paradigm; theodicy
dūcō	abduct; duke; produce	tug; tow; team
ego	ego	I
meī		me; myself
gerō	gerund	
invidia	invidious; envy	
is	id; identify; iterate	
mittō	missive; intermittent	
nōs	nostrum	us; our
paucī	paucity; poco	pony
scribō	scribble; manuscript	
sentīō	sentence; sentiment; sense	send
socius	social; society; associate	
validus	invalid; valence; avail	wield
veniō	event; covenant; prevent	come

CHAPTER V

Vocabulary

- **amīcītia, amīcītiaē** *f.* friendship
 - **inimīcītia, inimīcītiaē** *f.* enmity, hostility
- **fātum, fātī** *n.* destiny, fate
 - **proelium, proeliū** *n.* battle
- —, **meī** (reflexive pron.) myself (§44)
- —, **nostrum/nostri** (reflexive pron.) ourselves (§44)
- —, **tuī** (reflexive pron.) yourself (§44)
- —, **vestrum/vestri** (reflexive pron.) yourselves (§44)
- —, **suī** (reflexive pron.) himself, herself, itself; themselves (§44)
- **accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus** receive; accept; hear (of), learn (of)
- **cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum** go, move; yield; withdraw
 - **accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum** go to, come to, approach
 - **discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum** go away, depart
- **interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus** kill
- **perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus** complete, accomplish
- **abeō, abīre, abīi, abitum** go away
- **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bring, bear, carry; endure (§43)
 - **sē ferre** (idiom) to proceed (quickly)
- **meminī, meminisse** (defective verb) remember
- **ōdī, ōdisse** (defective verb) hate
- **redeō, redīre, redī, reditum** go back, return
- dūrus, -a, -um** hard; harsh
- ipse, ipsa, ipsum** (intensive adj.) -self, -selves; very (§46)
- meus, -a, -um** my (own) (§45)
- noster, nostra, nostrum** our (own) (§45)
- **pius, -a, -um** dutiful, loyal
 - **impius, -a, -um** disloyal, wicked
- suus, -a, -um** his (own), her (own), its (own); their (own) (§45)
- tuus, -a, -um** your (own) (§45)
- vester, vestra, vestrum** your (pl.) (own) (§45)
- bene** (adv.) well
- etsī** (conj.) although
- **male** (adv.) badly
- multum** (adv.) much, a lot
- nisi** (conj.) if . . . not, unless
- postquam** (conj.) after
- quamquam** (conj.) although
- quoniam** (conj.) since, because
- sī** (conj.) if
- **sīc** (adv.) so, thus, in this way, in such a way
- **tamen** (adv.) nevertheless
- **ubi** (conj.) when; (interrog. adv.) where, when
- **ut** (conj.) as; when
- valdē** (adv.) strongly

Vocabulary Notes

- ▶ **amīcītia, amīcītiaef.** and **inimīcītia, inimīcītiaef.** are both abstract nouns. They are formed by the addition of the suffix **-tia** to the stems of **amīcus, -a, -um** and **inimīcus, -a, -um**. All abstract nouns of this type are thus first-declension nouns. A **suffix** (< **suffigō**, fasten beneath [as a support]) is a unit of meaning added to the end of a word to produce another word.
- ▶ **inimīcītia** usually appears in the plural to indicate not the abstract notion of “enmity” but a concrete instance of it. The plural may be translated “unfriendly relations,” “hostilities.”
- ▶ **fātum, fātī n.** is derived from a verb that means “utter”; hence, its basic meaning is an “utterance” (cf. **fāma**). Through the meaning of “prophetic utterance” or “oracle” it came to mean “destiny” or “fate.” With reference to an individual the plural often means “ill fate” and thus “death.” When capitalized in the plural, **Fāta** refers to the divine “Fates.”
- ▶ —, **meī**; —, **nostrum/nostri**; —, **tuī**; —, **vestrum/estri**; and —, **suī** are reflexive pronouns. Because they are reflexive pronouns, they do not have nominative forms. MEMORIZE A BLANK IN PLACE OF A NOMINATIVE SINGULAR. For the forms and meanings of these words see §44.

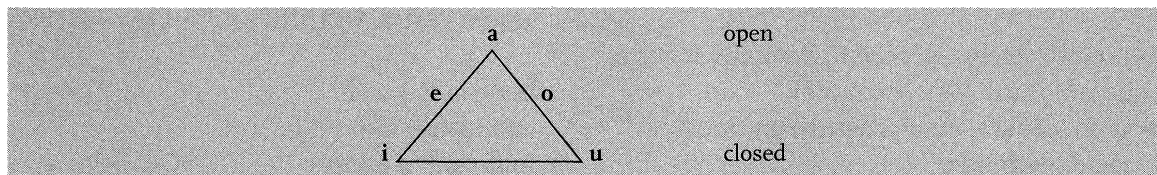
Compound Verbs, Prefixes, Assimilation, and Vowel Weakening

A **compound verb** (< **compōnō**, put together) is a verb formed from the combination of a simple, or uncompounded, verb and a prefix. A **prefix** (< **praefigō**, fasten in front) is a unit of meaning added to the beginning of a word to produce another word. Most prefixes in Latin are derived from adverbs, and many prefixes have corresponding prepositions. A prefix has a basic meaning, and the meaning of a compound Latin verb can sometimes be deduced by combining the meaning of the simple verb with the basic meaning of the prefix. Thus **accēdō** is a compound formed by the addition of the prefix **ad-** (to, toward) to **cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum**, “go,” and this compound means “go toward,” “approach.” However, the meanings of many compound verbs cannot be deduced in this way, and for this reason compound verbs are given as separate vocabulary entries.

When a prefix is combined with a simple verb, two kinds of phonetic change¹ may occur: assimilation and vowel weakening. **Assimilation** (< **assimilō**, make similar to) occurs when the prefix ends in a consonant and that consonant *changes to become similar to or identical with* the sound of the first consonant of the simple verb. For example: **ad + cēdō > accēdō**. The **-d** at the end of **ad** *assimilates to* the **c-** at the beginning of **cēdō**.

Vowel weakening refers to the change in the quality of the vowel of a stem. For example: **ad- + capiō > accipiō**. When the compound **accipiō** was formed, the addition of the prefix **ad-** to **capiō** caused the **-a-** of the stem **cap-** to change (weaken) into **-i-**. Vowel weakening is due to an earlier accentual system in Latin, whereby only the first syllable of a word was stressed. The other, unstressed syllables were regularly pronounced more weakly than they would have been if accented. When the first syllable of a simple verb was no longer the initial syllable (because of the addition of a prefix), it was more weakly pronounced.

The vowels of Latin (as of English) are regularly represented by the **vowel triangle**:



The vowel **a** is described as **open** because the tongue is placed at the bottom of the mouth, and the mouth is as open as possible when it is pronounced. The vowels **i** and **u** at the bottom of the triangle are described as **closed** because the tongue is raised when the vowels are pronounced and the mouth is more closed. **e** and **o** are in between. When vowel weakening occurs, open vowels become more closed. When initial vowels become **medial** (i.e., not first), the following instances of vowel weakening are most frequent:

<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. a → i before a single consonant <i>except -r</i> 2. a → e before two consonants <i>and</i> before -r 3. e → i before a single consonant <i>except -r</i> 	<p>Example</p> <p>per- + faciō > perficiō</p> <p>per- + factus > perfectus</p> <p>per- + teneō > pertineō</p>
--	---

There are compound verbs in which vowel weakening does not occur. The compounds of **audiō, dūcō, gerō, mittō, moveō, pōnō, scrībō, sentiō, veniō, and videō**—all verbs from previous chapters—do not show

1. A **phonetic change** is an alteration in pronunciation with a corresponding change in spelling.

vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF ONE OF THESE VERBS APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN. Instances of vowel weakening or retention of the simple verb within the compound are cited in the vocabulary notes.

The concepts and rules of assimilation and vowel weakening highlight and explain the similarities between sets of principal parts. (Cf. *perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus* with *interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus*.) Familiarity with these rules will aid in the speedy acquisition of new vocabulary by making similarities in patterns of principal parts more apparent and by making it possible to anticipate the patterns of other compound verbs.

- **accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ad-** to **capiō**, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. Its basic meaning is “take to oneself,” “receive.” **accipiō** may also mean “hear (of)” (receive through one’s ears). By extension of this meaning **accipiō** may refer to understanding information received and thus may mean “learn (of).” Compare **audiō**, whose meaning is more restricted. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF **CAPIŌ** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF **ACCIPĪŌ**. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **CAPIŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- **cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum** is an intransitive verb. In addition to its basic meaning of “go” or “move,” it may mean “yield” to a person or idea or “withdraw” from a place or activity. Compounds of **cēdō** do not exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **CĒDŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- **accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ad-** to **cēdō**, and its basic meaning is “go to” or “come to.” **accēdō** is usually intransitive in prose authors and is regularly followed by **ad** + accusative. The preposition **ad** repeats the prefix **ad-** and often cannot be translated.

Auxilia ad oppidum accēdebant.

The auxiliary troops were approaching (toward) the town.

- **discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **dis-** to **cēdō**. It is an intransitive verb.
- **interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **inter-** to **faciō**, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening.
- **perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **per-** to **faciō**, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF **FACIŌ** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF **INTERFICIŌ** AND **PERFICIŌ**. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **FACIŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- **abeō, abīre, abīi, abitum** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ab-** to the irregular verb **eō**, and its basic meaning is “go away.” **abeō** conjugates exactly as **eō** *except* that it has only one third principal part. For the forms of **eō** in the perfect active indicative, see §41.
- **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** is a third-conjugation verb with certain irregular forms in the present system (§43). **ferō** derives from two PIE roots: ***bher-** and ***tela-**. **ferō** may mean “bring,” “bear,” or “carry,” and by extension “endure” (hardships, troubles). **ferō** may also mean “say,” “report,” particularly when a common story or a myth is being reported. When **ferō** takes a reflexive pronoun as a direct object, the idiom means “proceed (quickly).”

Auxilium virīs prōvinciae ferō.

I am bringing aid to the men of the province.

multa mala tuli.

I have endured many evil things.

Mē ad prōvinciam ferēbam.

I was proceeding (quickly) to the province.

- **meminī, meminisse** is a **defective verb**, a verb that lacks certain normal inflected forms. **meminī** has forms of the perfect active system only (perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect). However, the *perfect* forms are translated as if they were *present*, the *pluperfect* forms as if they were *imperfect*, and the *future perfect* forms as if they were *future*. The first principal part is the first person singular perfect active indicative, and thus the perfect stem is **memin-**. The second principal part, **meminisse**, is the perfect active infinitive (§105), but it is translated as if it were the present active infinitive (to remember).

meminī often takes an Objective Genitive.² **meminī** may also take an Accusative, Direct Object, particularly when the object is a neuter pronoun. It may also take an Object Infinitive.

2. The Objective Genitive that appears with **meminī** is also called the Genitive with Expressions of Remembering and Forgetting.

Meminiſtine patriae?	Do you remember (your) homeland? (Objective Genitive)
Id memineram.	I was remembering it. (Accusative, Direct Object)
Semper tuī meminero.	I shall always remember you. (Objective Genitive)

meminī has no present active imperative forms, but it uses instead the future active imperative forms **mentō** (singular) and **mentōte** (plural) with present meanings. MEMORIZE THESE FORMS.

- **ōdī, ōdisse** is a defective verb. **ōdī** has forms of the perfect active system only (perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect). However, the *perfect* forms are translated as if they were *present*, the *pluperfect* forms as if they were *imperfect*, and the *future perfect* forms as if they were *future*. The first principal part is the first person singular perfect active indicative, and thus the perfect stem is **ōd-**. The second principal part, **ōdisse**, is the perfect active infinitive (§105), but it is translated as if it were the present active infinitive (to hate).

Malōs ōdimus.	We hate bad men.
Malōs ōderātis.	You (pl.) used to hate bad men.
Malōs ōderō.	I shall hate bad men.

ōdī has no imperative forms.

- **redeō, redire, rediī, reditum** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **red-** to **eō**, and its basic meaning is “go back.” **redeō** conjugates exactly as **eō** *except* that it has only one third principal part. For the forms of **eō** in the perfect active indicative, see §41.
- **pius, -a, -um** describes a person who acts in accordance with duty to one’s family, one’s country, or one’s gods. When **pius** describes a thing (war, weapon, cause), the dutifulness of a person has been transferred to the thing. **impius, -a, -um** is a compound adjective formed by the addition of the prefix **in-** (not) to **pius**. Neither **pius** nor **impius** has a masculine singular vocative in classical Latin.
- **male**, “badly,” includes the following range of meanings: “wickedly,” “wrongfully”; “poorly,” “scarcely”; “inopportunistly,” “ill-advisedly.”
- The adverb **sic** indicates that the action of the verb it modifies is being done in a manner that has just been indicated in a preceding clause or sentence or is about to be indicated in a following clause or sentence.

Sic pugnābant.	They were fighting in such a way (as I have just described).
	They were fighting in such a way (as I shall now describe).

- The adverb **tamen** regularly occurs in a main clause following a concessive clause. **tamen** may also occur without an expressed concession in the preceding clause or sentence to indicate that the statement that includes **tamen** is true in spite of what has just been said.

Quamquam bonam famam optās, tamen cum incolis malīs nōn pugnās.
Although you desire a good reputation, nevertheless you are not fighting against the bad inhabitants.
Dominus nōn est in agrīs. Servus tamen cum diligentīā labōrat.
The master is not in the fields. Nevertheless, the slave is working diligently.

- **ubi** may be used as a subordinating conjunction (when) that introduces a temporal clause or as an interrogative adverb (when, where) that introduces a question.

Ubi ad oppidum venit, labōrāre nōn optat.	When she comes to the town, she does not desire to work.
Ubi veniet? Ubi est?	When will she come? Where is she?

- **ut** may mean “as” and introduce a comparative clause or “when” and introduce a temporal clause (§48). A comparative clause introduced by **ut** provides a standard of comparison for a main clause, which often includes the adverb **sic**. **ut** meaning “as” may also introduce virtual parenthetical remarks.

Ut agricola agrōs, sic poēta verba cōgitat.
As a farmer [ponders] the fields, so a poet ponders words.
Bonum est sapientia, ut mihi videtur.
Wisdom is a good thing, as it seems to me.

cēdō
ferō, ferre

tulī, lātus
—, **suī**

Derivatives
ancestor; cease, cede; necessary
circumference; differ; suffer; fertile;
aquifer; vociferous
relate; collate; superlative; legislator
suicide

Cognates
bear; bier; barrow; burly; burden; birth; bring;
euphoria; periphery; paraphernalia
toll; tolerate; extol; (perhaps) Atlas
self; swami; secede; secret; sober; ethnic; Sinn Fein

CHAPTER VI

Vocabulary

- ▶ **Athēnae, Athēnārum** *f. pl.* Athens
- Rōma, Rōmae** *f.* Rome

- dictum, dictī** *n.* word; saying
- domus, domī** *f.* house, home

- ▶ **amor, amōris** *m.* love
- animal, animālis, -ium** *n.* animal
- ▶ **carmen, carminis** *n.* song, poem
- ▶ **Carthāgō, Carthāginis** *f.* Carthage
- ▶ **cīvis, cīvis, -ium** *m. or f.* citizen
- corpus, corporis** *n.* body
- ▶ **homō, hominis** *m.* human being, man
- ▶ **hostis, hostis, -ium** *m.* (public) enemy
- ▶ **iūs, iūris** *n.* right, law; judgment; court
- ▶ **mare, maris, *-ium** *n.* sea
- māter, mātris** *f.* mother
- ▶ **mēns, mentis, -ium** *f.* mind; intention, purpose; attitude
- mīles, mīlitis** *m.* soldier
- ▶ **moenia, moenium** *n. pl.* (city) walls
- pater, patris** *m.* father
- ▶ **patrēs cōscrip̄tī, voc. pl.** enrolled fathers, senators
- rēx, rēgis** *m.* king
- ▶ **rūs, rūris** *n. sing. or pl.,* country(side)
- ▶ **servitūs, servitūtis** *f.* slavery
- timor, timōris** *m.* fear
- ▶ **urbs, urbis, -ium** *f.* city
- ▶ **vīs, —, -ium** *f.* force, power; violence; *pl.,* strength (§55)

- ▶ **liberō** (1-tr.) free

- ▶ **careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus** lack, be without, be free (from) (+ abl.)

- ▶ **legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus** choose; read
- ▶ **intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus** understand

- ▶ **vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctūrus** live, be alive

- ācer, ācris, ācre** sharp, keen; fierce
- ▶ **facilis, facile** easy
- ▶ **difficilis, difficile** difficult
- ▶ **fēlix, fēlicis** lucky, fortunate, happy
- īnfēlix, īnfēlicis** unlucky, unfortunate, unhappy
- fortis, forte** brave; strong
- ingēns, ingentis** huge, vast; remarkable
- omnis, omne** every; all

- ▶ **autem** (postpositive conj.) however; moreover
- difficulter** (adv.) with difficulty
- facile** (adv.) easily; readily
- inter** (prep. + acc.) between, among; during
- ▶ **iūre** (adv.) rightly, justly
- omnīnō** (adv.) entirely; at all
- ▶ **sub** (prep. + acc.) under; up to (prep. + abl.) under; at the foot of; near
- umquam** (adv.) ever
- numquam** (adv.) never

Vocabulary Notes

- **Athēnae, Athēnārum** *f. pl.* appears in the plural only. (In English, too, the “s” on the end of Athens indicates that the name is plural in form.)
- The plural of **amor, amōris** *m.* may be translated “(feelings of) love,” “affection,” “love affair,” or “object of affection.” In Latin, the plural of an abstract noun is often used with a concrete meaning. When capitalized, **Amor** refers to the god Cupid.
- **carmen, carminis** *n.* is formed by the addition of the suffix **-men** to a stem of the verb **canō**. The basic meaning of **carmen** is thus something sung or chanted. It may mean a hymn, a ritual utterance, or an incantation. Since ancient poetry was often sung and always spoken out loud, **carmen** may describe a poem, a play, or a part of a play, regardless of whether it was actually sung. It may also refer abstractly to “poetry” or “song.”
- **Carthāgō, Carthāginis** *f.* (often spelled with a **K**) was a city in northern Africa and the capital of the Carthaginian or Phoenician empire. The Carthaginian empire was the most powerful in the western Mediterranean until Rome’s expansion. War broke out between Rome and Carthage in the third century B.C.E. and again in the middle of the second century B.C.E. These wars are referred to as the Punic wars (< **Pūnicus, -a, -um**, Phoenician, Carthaginian). The last of the Punic wars ended with the destruction of Carthage. Its legendary founder and queen was Dido, whom Aeneas encounters in the *Aeneid*.
- **cīvis, cīvis, -ium** *m. or f.* means “citizen” of a political unit as opposed to a foreigner, noncitizen, or slave. It may also mean “fellow citizen” or “countryman,” particularly in political addresses.
- The basic meaning of **homō, hominis** *m.* is “human being” as distinct from anything nonhuman (gods, animals). **homō** is more neutral than **vir**, which is always explicitly male and may convey the notion of a man of honor or principle. The plural forms of **homō** are often used to mean “people” in general as opposed to **populus**, which means a particular “people” or “populace.”

Hominēs multa impia dīcunt.

People say many wicked things.

- **hostis, hostis, -ium** *m.* is a “public enemy” of a country as opposed to **inimīcus**, a “personal enemy.”
- **iūs, iūris** *n.* expresses the abstract notion of “law” or “right,” rather than a particular law, for which Latin uses the word **lēx**. It may also refer to “right” in the sense of “rights of citizens.” **iūs** may also mean “judgment” or “court” (the place of judgment).
- **mare, maris, *-ium** *n.* has an asterisk before the genitive plural ending because the form ***marium** does not occur in the Latin literature that survives. Although the genitive form **marum** does occur, **mare** displays all other *i*-stem features.
- **mēns, mentis, -ium** *f.* may mean “mind” as the seat of intellectual activity, “intention” or “purpose” as a result of that intellectual activity, or “frame of mind,” “attitude.”
- **moenia, moenium** *n. pl.* is the word for the walls that surround a city for defense.
- The phrase **patrēs cōnscrīptī**, most frequently seen in the vocative case, means “fathers (having been enrolled)” (in the senate) (< **cōnscrībō [con- + scrībō], cōnscrībēre, cōnscrīpsī, cōnscrīptus**, enroll). It is a frequent appellation for the collective Roman senate. The phrase occasionally appears in other cases. The plural **patrēs** without the participle **cōnscrīptī** may also be used to mean “senators.”
- **rūs, rūris** *n.* means the “countryside” as opposed to the city and often appears in the plural as well with this meaning. Its locative form is **rūrī**.
- **servitūs, servitūtis** *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-tūs** to the stem of the noun **servus**.
- The final **-bs** of **urbs** is pronounced as **ps** in “taps.” **urbs** often refers specifically to Rome, while **oppidum** designates a smaller town in Italy.
- **vīs, —, -ium** *f.* is an irregular third-declension noun. (For the full declension of **vīs** see §55.) In the singular, **vīs** has the meaning “force,” “power,” or “violence,” while in the plural it means “(physical or mental) strength.”

Incolae oppidum vī cēpērunt.
Vīrēs nautārum superābantur.

The inhabitants captured the town by force.
The strength of the sailors was being overcome.

- **liberō, liberāre, liberāvī, liberātus** is a transitive verb that is often accompanied by an Ablative of Separation (§58).

Incolās periculō liberāvimus.

We freed the inhabitants from danger.

- **careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus** is an intransitive verb. The fourth principal part, **caritūrus** (about to lack), is a future active participle. In addition to its basic meanings of “lack” and “be without,” **careō** may mean “be free from.” **careō** takes an Ablative of Separation (§58) that may be translated as a direct object in English.

Agricola amicis nōn caret.	The farmer does not lack friends. The farmer is not without friends.
Filius rēgīnae cūris caruit.	The son of the queen was free from cares.

- **legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus** may mean “gather” (shells, bones, spoils of war) or “choose” (leaders, judges). Through the notion of gathering something with one’s eyes and observing something, it comes to have the particular meaning of “read.”
- **intelligō, intellegere, intelligēxī, intelligētus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **inter-** to **legō**. In compounds **inter-** often means “thoroughly.” From the notion of thoroughly reading or observing something, **intelligō** comes to mean “understand.”
- **vīvō, vivere, vixī, vīctūrus** is an intransitive verb. The fourth principal part, **vīctūrus** (about to live), is a future active participle.
- In addition to meaning “easy,” **facilis, facile** may be used of materials that are easy to work (tractable); of people or things that move with ease (nimble, agile); and of gods or people that are easily moved (favorable, gracious, indulgent).
- **difficilis, difficile** is an adjective formed by the addition of the prefix **dis-** to **facilis**. **difficilis** exhibits regular vowel weakening of the stem vowel. In addition to meaning “difficult,” **difficilis** may be used of people or animals that are hard to move (stubborn, inflexible, intractable).
- When **fēlix, fēlicis** describes plants, trees, land, etc., it means “fruitful,” “rich,” or “productive.” It may often have a more expanded meaning of “lucky” or “auspicious” for omens and the like. A person who is **fēlix** is “fortunate” and by extension “happy.”
- **autem** is a postpositive conjunction that joins two sentences or clauses. Most often **autem** adds a thought that is in opposition to a previous one (however), but sometimes the new thought is merely a different, additional idea (moreover).

Nihil scribō. Multa autem legō.	I write nothing. However, I read many things.
Antōnius bene dicit. Bene autem scribit.	Antony speaks well. Moreover, he writes well.

- The adverb **iūre** is in origin the ablative singular of **iūs**.
- Like **in**, the preposition **sub** takes both the accusative and the ablative. When it takes the accusative, it conveys an idea either of motion “under” or of motion from below “up to” a place (city walls, mountains). When it takes an ablative, it indicates something “under” which someone or something is located. It can also mean “at the foot of,” “close up to,” or “near” (city walls, mountains).

Militēs sub moenia mīsit.	He sent the soldiers up to the city walls.
Erant militēs sub oppidō.	There were soldiers close up to/at the foot of the town.

	Derivatives	Cognates
ācer	vinegar; acrid; eager	ear; acute; hammer; heaven; acme; acrobat
careō	caret	castrate; castle; chaste; caste; incest
cīvis	civil; city	Shiva; cemetery
fortis	fort; forte; effort; force	barrow; iceberg; borough; burglar
homō	homicide; hombre; homage	bridegroom; chameleon; humble
hostis	host; hostile	guest
iūs	jury; injury; perjure; just	
legō	legend; legible; collect; lectern	lexicon; dyslexia; -logue; logic
mare	maritime; marine	mermaid; meerschaum; marsh; morass
māter	maternal; matrix; matrimony	mother; metropolis; material; Demeter
mēns	mental; demented	mind; automatic; maenad; mentor; mania; mantra
pater	paternal; patrician; patron	father; patriarch
paucī	paucity; poco	pony
rūs	rural; rustic	room; rummage; ream
vīs	vim; violate; violent	

CHAPTER VII

Vocabulary

- āra, ārae *f.* altar
- ▶ cōpia, cōpiae *f.* abundance; *pl.*, troops, forces
 - ▶ fortūna, fortūnae *f.* fortune, chance
 - ▶ insidiae, insidiarum *f. pl.* ambush, plot, treachery
 - nātūra, nātūrae *f.* nature
 - umbra, umbrae *f.* shadow, shade
- ▶ ingenium, ingenī *n.* nature; disposition; (natural) talent
- templum, templī *n.* temple
- ▶ ars, artis, -ium *f.* skill, art; guile, trick
- ▶ cīvitas, cīvitatīs *f.* state, citizenry; citizenship
- frāter, frātris *m.* brother
- mors, mortis, -ium *f.* death
- ▶ pars, partis, -ium *f.* part
- soror, sorōris *f.* sister
- ▶ virtūs, virtūtīs *f.* manliness, courage; excellence, virtue
- ▶ vōx, vōcis *f.* voice; word
- ▶ maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus
remain, stay; *tr.*, await
- ▶ terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus
terrify, frighten
- ▶ cupiō, cupere, cupiī/cupivī, cupītus
desire, long for, want
- ▶ fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus
flee
- ▶ petō, petere, petiī/petivī, petītus
ask (for), seek; attack
- ▶ trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus
hand over, surrender; hand down
- ▶ vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus
conquer, overcome; *intr.*, win
- ▶ auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus
carry away, take away, remove
- ▶ differō, differre, distulī, dilātus *intr.*,
differ, be different; *tr.*, carry in different directions
- acerbus, -a, -um
bitter; harsh
- antīquus, -a, -um
old, ancient
- ▶ cārus, -a, -um
precious; dear (to) (+ *dat.*)
- ▶ certus, -a, -um
sure, certain, reliable
- incertus, -a, -um
unsure, uncertain, unreliable
- falsus, -a, -um
deceptive, false
- ▶ novus, -a, -um
new; strange
- vērus, -a, -um
real, true
- ▶ mortālis, mortāle
mortal
- ▶ immortalis, immortalē
immortal
- ▶ ante (*adv.*)
before, earlier, previously
(*prep.* + *acc.*)
before; in front of
- ▶ aut (*conj.*)
or
- ▶ aut . . . aut . . .
either . . . or . . .
- ▶ etiam (*adv.*)
also, even; still
- ▶ ita (*adv.*)
so, thus, in this way, in such a way
- ▶ nē (*adv.*)
not (§70)
- ▶ post (*adv.*)
after(ward), later; behind
(*prep.* + *acc.*)
after; behind
- ▶ solum (*adv.*)
only
- ▶ nōn solum . . . sed/vērum etiam . . .
not only . . . but also . . .
- ▶ utinam (*particle*)
introduces an Optative subjunctive (§70)
- ▶ vērō (*adv.*)
certainly, indeed; but (in fact)
- vērum (*conj.*)
but

Vocabulary Notes

- In the singular **cōpia**, **cōpiae** *f.* means “abundance” (of food, of material). In the plural it most often means “troops” or “forces” (an abundance of soldiers).
- **fortūna**, **fortūnae** *f.* indicates something that is opposed to reason or predictability. **fortūna** may be good or bad and is often personified as the divine agent Fortune.
- **insidiae**, **insidiarum** *f. pl.* never appears in the singular in Latin, but it has singular meanings (ambush, plot, treachery).
- **nātūra**, **nātūrae** *f.* descends from the PIE root ***genE** (be born). **nātūra** is thus the power that determines the physical properties of plants, animals, humans—of the world. It may also refer to the essence, function, or fundamental quality of anything (the nature of the soul, of gods, of fear). Both **nātūra** and **ingenium** may refer to the “(innate) character” of a person, and they are sometimes used together. In philosophical contexts, **nātūra** (sometimes capitalized) means the order or guiding principle that governs the world.
- Like **nātūra**, **ingenium**, **ingeniū** *n.* also descends from the PIE root ***genE** (be born). **ingenium** thus refers to a quality that is inborn, and it is most commonly used of human beings. In some instances it refers to a person’s natural “temperament” or “disposition.” It is often used of literary or oratorical “ability” or “talent.”
- In contrast to **nātūra** or **ingenium**, **ars**, **artis**, **-ium** *f.* refers to a “skill” learned or acquired through practice. **ars** may be used of any “craft” or “trade,” including the crafts of artistic expression (music, poetry). It may also mean a specific body of knowledge (the art of divination, of philosophy). Sometimes **ars** is used of a particular “work of art.” **ars** may have a negative sense (artificiality, craftiness) and so may mean “guile” or “trick.” The term **bonae artēs** means “liberal studies” or “cultural pursuits,” those pursuits that are the mark of civilized society.
- **civitas**, **civitatis** *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the abstract noun suffix **-tās** to the stem of the noun **civis**. **civitas** may mean an organized community to which one belongs as a citizen (state, citizenry), or it may mean the rights one has as a citizen (citizenship).

Magnō in periculō civitās fuit.
Poētam civitate dōnābimus.

The state was in great danger.
We shall reward the poet with citizenship.

- **pars**, **partis**, **-ium** *f.* refers to one of the portions into which a thing is divided. It may be repeated to indicate different groups or sections, and when it is the subject, **pars** may take a *plural* verb.

Caesar partem militum in bellum dūxit, partem in prōvinciam mīsīt.
Caesar led part of the soldiers into war, he sent part into the province.
Pars hostium proelium optābant, pars timēbant.
Part of the enemies were desiring battle, part were fearing (it).

pars may also mean a “side,” “position,” or “opinion” held or taken. In both the singular and the plural, **pars** may refer to a political “faction” or to either “side” in a lawsuit or trial.

- **virtūs**, **virtūtis** *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the abstract noun suffix **-tūs** to the stem of the noun **vir**. Its specific sense is thus “manliness” or “courage,” but it also may refer more generally to any intellectual or moral “excellence” or “virtue.”
- **vōx**, **vōcis** *f.* may mean the “voice” of a human or of a musical instrument, or it may mean that which is produced by the human voice or instrument (word or sound). The singular may also be used to refer to an “utterance” or “speech.”
- **maneō**, **manēre**, **mānsī**, **mānsūrus** is regularly an intransitive verb meaning “remain” or “stay.” The fourth principal part, **mānsūrus** (about to remain), is a future active participle. With **in** + ablative **maneō** may mean “remain steady in” or “abide by” (the truth, a conviction, a pact). It is occasionally used transitively and means “await” or “wait for” someone or something. Compounds of **maneō** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **MANEŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

Ubi incolae discesserunt, mānsimus.
Sulla semper in sententiā mānsit.
Fāta et bonum virum manent.

When the inhabitants departed, we remained.
Sulla always remained (steady) in (his) opinion.
The fates await even the good man.

- Compounds of **terreō**, **terrēre**, **terruī**, **territus** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **TERREŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

- **cupiō, cupere, cupiī** or **cupivī, cupītus** may take an Object Infinitive, often with a subject of the infinitive in the accusative case (see §108). **cupiō** has two third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. In the second person singular and plural perfect active indicative the short **-i-** of the stem **cupi-** always contracts with the appropriate endings (**cupīstī, cupīstis**). While both **cupiō** and **optō** mean “desire,” **cupiō** expresses a natural or involuntary desire, while **optō** suggests a more deliberate choice.

Servī esse liberī cupiunt.
Servī gladiōs optant.

Slaves desire to be free. (natural desire)
The slaves desire swords. (deliberate desire)

- **fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus** is most often intransitive but is occasionally used transitively. The fourth principal part, **fugitūrus** (about to flee), is a future active participle. **fugiō** is often used of a person going into exile. Compounds of **fugiō** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **FUGIŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- **petō, petere, petiī/petivī, petītus** has two third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. In the second person singular and plural perfect active indicative the short **-i-** of the stem **peti-** always contracts with the appropriate endings (**petīstī, petīstis**). When **petō** means “ask for” or “seek,” it takes a direct object of the thing asked for. The person from whom something is sought is expressed by **ā/ab** + ablative. When the verb means “attack,” it takes a direct object of the person or thing attacked. Compounds of **petō** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **PETŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

Servus pecūniam ā dominō petit.
Servus gladiō dominum petit.

The slave asks for money from (his) master.
The slave attacks (his) master with a sword.

- **trādō, trādere, trādidi, trādītus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **trāns-** (across) to **dō**; it exhibits regular vowel weakening in the third and fourth principal parts. **trādō** may mean “hand over” or “surrender.” It often means “hand down” in the sense of transmitting something to posterity or of relating a story. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF **DŌ** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF **TRĀDŌ**. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **DŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- **vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus** has the intransitive meaning “win” in the sense of “prevail,” “be victorious.” Compounds of **vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **VINCŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- **aufferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus** is formed by the addition of the prefix **ab-** to **ferō**. In the first two principal parts the **-b-** of the prefix drops out, and the **a-** lengthens into the diphthong **au-**. When a vowel lengthens to compensate for the loss of another letter, this phonetic change is called **compensatory lengthening**. In the third principal part, a fuller form of the prefix, **abs-**, appears. ALL THE COMPOUNDS OF **FERŌ** SHOW THE SAME IRREGULARITIES OF FORM AS **FERŌ**.
- **differō, differre, distulī, dilātus** is formed by the addition of the prefix **dis-** to **ferō**. In the first two principal parts the final **-s-** of **dis-** assimilates to the **f-** of **ferō**. In the fourth principal part the **-s-** of the prefix drops out and the **-i-** is lengthened. **differō** is more often intransitive (differ, be different) than transitive, and it may appear with an Ablative of Respect. The person or group from whom one differs is usually expressed by a noun in the ablative case with the preposition **ā/ab**. ALL THE COMPOUNDS OF **FERŌ** SHOW THE SAME IRREGULARITIES OF FORM AS **FERŌ**.

Ā frātre sententiā differt.

He differs from (his) brother in (respect to) (his) opinion.

- The adjective **cārus, -a, -um** is often found with a Dative of Reference that indicates the person to whom someone or something is dear. The dative is often found between the adjective and the noun that it modifies.

Incolae dīs cārī discēdunt.

The inhabitants dear to the gods are departing.

- **certus, -a, -um** may describe both things (plans, decisions) and people as “determined,” “certain,” or “fixed.” The adverb **certē**, in addition to affirming (surely, certainly), may also limit (certainly, at least).

Verba poētae intellegere certē potes.

You are certainly able to understand the words of the poet.

Ego certē prō patriā pugnābō.

I at least shall fight for the homeland.

- **novus, -a, -um** may be translated either “new” or “strange” and is used to describe people or things previously unseen or unknown. When a man from an unestablished family achieved a major political office for the first time, he was called a **homō novus** or **novus homō**, “new man.” The term often carried an implied insult.
- **mortālis, mortāle**, “mortal,” is derived from the noun **mors** by the addition of the suffix **-ālis, -āle** (of, belonging to, subject to) to the stem **mort-**. Any living being described as **mortālis** is subject to death. **mortālis** and the related adjective **immortālis, immortalē** (**in-** [not] + **mortālis**) are commonly used as substantives.
- **ante** may be either an adverb or a preposition that takes the accusative. As an adverb, it most frequently has a temporal sense (earlier, previously, before). As a preposition with the accusative, it may have a temporal sense (before) or a spatial one (before, in front of).

Verba poëtae ante nōn intellēxi.	I did not understand the words of the poet before (previously).
Ante bellum miserī erant incolae.	Before the war the inhabitants were miserable.
Nauta ante templum ambulābat.	The sailor was walking in front of the temple.

- **aut** is a coordinating conjunction and thus connects only parallel or grammatically balanced words, phrases, or clauses. **aut** joins a previous word, phrase, or clause with another equivalent one that is antithetical to it. **aut** is used to indicate mutually exclusive propositions.

Servus aut liber est incola.	The inhabitant is a slave or a free man.
-------------------------------------	--

To emphasize the strict balance of elements that are to be joined in Latin, **aut** is often used to mark each element: e.g., **aut filium aut filiam**. It is convenient to translate the first **aut** by the English word “either”: “either the son or the daughter” (direct objects). When such a parallel series is longer than two (**aut nautam aut agricolam aut poëtam**), omit translating the first **aut** and say “or” for the others: “the sailor or the farmer or the poet” (direct objects).

- The adverb **etiam**, “also,” “even,” marks a fact or thought added to one already mentioned. The additional idea or thought is usually understood to be more important than the preceding one. When the thought is related to time, **etiam** means “still.” **etiam** is usually placed immediately before the word it emphasizes.

Discēdam. Nōn etiam timēbō.	I shall depart. I shall not also fear.
Etiam puerōs ex prōvinciā agēs?	Will you drive even the boys out from the province?
Quoniam superāvisti, virōs interficere etiam optās?	Because you have conquered, do you still desire to kill the men?

- The adverb **ita** may refer to what precedes or what follows. Like **sīc**, it may be used in comparisons to correlate with **ut** (as).

Nōn ita amō ut hominēs.	I do not love so as humans (do).
--------------------------------	----------------------------------

In answers, it is used for strong affirmation or negation.

Ita est.	It is so.
Nōn est ita.	It is not so.

- **nē** is a negating adverb (like **nōn**) used only in particular constructions with verbs in the subjunctive. It may be used to negate a Hortatory/Jussive or Optative subjunctive (§70).
- **post** may be either an adverb or a preposition that takes the accusative. As an adverb, it most frequently has a temporal sense (after[ward], later), but it sometimes conveys the spatial sense of “behind.” As a preposition with the accusative, it may have a temporal sense (after) or a spatial one (behind).
- **sōlum** is an irregular adverb meaning “only.” It is derived from the adjective **sōlus, -a, -um** (alone, only). **vērūm** is a conjunction derived from the adjective **vērū, -a, -um** and means “but.” **sōlum** and **vērūm** may be used separately, but they are often used in the construction **nōn sōlum . . . sed/vērūm etiam . . .** (not only . . . but also . . .).

Crassus inimicōs nōn sōlum pecūniā sed/vērūm etiam gladiō superāvit.
Crassus overcame (his) enemies not only by money but also by the sword.

- **utinam** is an introductory particle that may introduce an Optative subjunctive (§70). An **introductory particle** introduces a particular kind of clause or speech. **utinam** is not translated in this construction.

- **vērō** is an irregular adverb derived from the adjective **vērus**, **-a**, **-um**. Although it may mean “truly,” it is more often used in answers to express agreement (certainly, indeed) or with mild adversative force to join two sentences (but [in fact]) and add an additional corroborating thought. In this second usage, it is always postpositive.

Fuisti in oppidō?

Vērō.

Were you in the town?

Indeed (I was).

Bonus poēta erat Catullus, magnus vērō Vergilius.

Catullus was a good poet, but (in fact) Vergil (was a) great (one).

	Derivatives	Cognates
acerbus	acerbic ; acrid; acid	acme ; acute; hammer
āra	arid	ash
cārus	charity; caress; cherish	Kamasutra
certus	certain; decree; secret	crime; critic; riddle
maneō	mansion; permanent; ménage	
mors	mortal; amortize	murder ; ambrosia; manticore
pars	parcel; parse; part	pair; par; compare
petō	petition ; appetite; repeat	archaeopteryx; symptom
vērus	verity; verdict; very; verify	warlock
vincō	vanquish; convince, evict	wight; Ordovician

CHAPTER VIII

Vocabulary

- ▶ **fuga, fugae** *f.* flight
- ▶ **ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliū** *n.* exile
- ▶ **gaudium, gaudiū** *n.* joy
- ▶ **locus, locī** *m.* place
 - ▶ **loca, locōrum** *n. pl.* places
- ▶ **modus, modī** *m.* measure; limit; rhythm, meter; manner, way
- ▶ **oculus, oculī** *m.* eye
- ▶ **cōnsul, cōnsulis** *m.* consul
- ▶ **lēx, lēgis** *f.* law
 - ▶ **lēgem ferre** (idiom) to pass a law
- ▶ **libertās, libertātis** *f.* freedom
- ▶ **mūnus, mūneris** *n.* service, duty; gift
- ▶ **pāx, pācis** *f.* peace; favor
- quī, quae, quod** (rel. pron.) who, which, that (§78)
- quis, quid** (interrog. pron.) who, what (§80)
- ▶ **cōnor** (1-tr.) try, attempt (§75)
- ▶ **audeō, audēre, ausus sum** dare (§76)
 - fateor, fatērī, fassus sum** confess, admit (§75)
- ▶ **pāreō, pārere, pārui, pāritūrus** be obedient, obey (+ dat.) (§82)
- ▶ **placeō, placere, placui, placitum** be pleasing, please (+ dat.) (§82)
- ▶ **morior, morī, mortuus sum** die (§75)
 - relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus** leave (behind); abandon
- ▶ **patior, patī, passus sum** experience, suffer, endure; allow (§75)
- ▶ **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum** follow (§75)
 - experior, experīrī, expertus sum** test; try; experience (§75)
- ▶ **inquam** (defective verb) say
 - hic, haec, hoc** (demonstr. adj./pron.) this; these (§77)
 - ille, illa, illud** (demonstr. adj./pron.) that; those (§77)
 - iste, ista, istud** (demonstr. adj./pron.) that (of yours); those (of yours) (§77)
 - quī, quae, quod** (interrog. adj.) what . . . , which . . . (§81)
- ▶ **caecus, -a, -um** blind; hidden, secret, dark
- ▶ **audāx, audācis** daring, bold; reckless
- ▶ **gravis, grave** heavy; important, serious; severe
- ▶ **levis, leve** light; trivial; fickle
- ▶ **īdem, eadem, idem** same
- ▶ **audacter/audāciter** (adv.) boldly; recklessly
- ▶ **quemadmodum** (rel. or interrog. adv.) in the manner in which, as; how
- ▶ **quō modō** (interrog. adv.) in what way, how
- ▶ **quoque** (adv.) also
- ▶ **saepe** (adv.) often
- ▶ **tandem** (adv.) finally, at last; *in questions and commands*, pray, I ask you, then

Vocabulary Notes

- ▶ **fuga, fugae** *f.* is often found with a Subjective Genitive (§35). It may refer to an act of fleeing or the rapidity with which someone or something moves. It may also be used of “banishment” or “exile.”
- ▶ **ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliū** *n.* may refer to the act of banishment or the place to which one is exiled. The *s* placed in parentheses in the vocabulary entry indicates that the word may be spelled either with or without an *s*.
- ▶ **locus, locī** *m.* may mean a physical “place”; a “position,” “rank,” or “post” in society; or “room” or “opportunity” to engage in an activity. In classical Latin, the plural of **locus** is most often declined as if it were a neuter noun, and therefore the entry **loca, locōrum** *n. pl.* is given. The masculine plural form is also used, particularly when the noun means “passages” in a written work or “topics” or “subjects.” Both Vergil and Sallust, however, use the masculine plural with the more general meaning of physical “places.” The ablative singular or plural of **locus** is often used as an Ablative of Place Where with no preposition (**multis locis**, “in many places”).
- ▶ **modus, modī** *m.* means “measure” in the sense of a quantity (of land, of grain). From this basic notion of quantity or amount arise several extended meanings, including “limit” (an amount that should not be exceeded) and more abstractly “moderation” or “restraint.” In musical and poetic contexts, **modus** may mean “rhythm,” “meter,” or even the “tone” of a voice or a song. Another common meaning is “mode,” “way,” or “manner.”

Modum agrī filiīs dedit.
Modum irae pōnet?
Id eō modō fecī.

He gave a measure of land (field) to his sons.
 Will he place a limit to (his) anger?
 I did it in this way.

The prepositional phrases **in . . . modum** and **ad . . . modum** (in the manner, according to the manner) frequently occur with a genitive or with an adjective modifying **modum**.

Rēgis in/ad modum dixit.
In/Ad hunc modum dixit.

She spoke *in/according to the manner* of a king.
 She spoke *in/according to this manner*.

- ▶ **cōsul, cōsulis** *m.* is the title given to the highest political magistrate in Rome at the time of the Republic. According to tradition, the Roman Republic was founded after the expulsion of the Etruscan king Tarquinius Superbus (ca. 509 B.C.E.). Two consuls, elected annually, were the political leaders of the senate and the commanding generals whenever occasion required. Even during the imperial period—when the emperor held the highest power in Rome—there continued to be consuls, although their role in running the government and the military was greatly decreased. One referred to a given year by the names of the two consuls of that year.
- ▶ **lēx, lēgis** *f.* means a particular law proposed (bill) or passed (statute). It may be used of a “regulation” laid down by a variety of authorities. It may also mean “law” as the collective legal authority of a state. **lēx** appears in the idiom **lēgem ferre**, “to pass a law.”
- ▶ **libertās, libertātis** *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-tās** to the stem of the adjective **liber**.
- ▶ **mūnus, mūneris** *n.* is the word for any sort of “service,” “duty,” or “function” (of war, of women, of eyes). In either the singular or the plural **mūnus** may refer particularly to “duties” or “services” for the dead. A second important meaning, an extension of the idea of service, is “gift.”
- ▶ **pāx, pācis** *f.* initially meant a “pact” or “agreement,” usually to avert or end hostilities. It then came to mean more broadly the opposite of **bellum**. It may also have the specialized meaning of “blessing” or “favor” granted by one or more of the gods.
- ▶ **cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum** is a transitive deponent verb. It often takes an Object Infinitive and is sometimes used absolutely (make an effort).

Hostem vincere cōnāmur.
Quamquam cōnāmur, hostis vincit.

We are trying to conquer the enemy.
 Although we are trying, the enemy is conquering.

- **audeō, audēre, ausus sum** is a transitive semideponent verb. Like **cōnor** it may take an Object Infinitive or be used absolutely (be bold).
- **pāreō, pārere, pārui, pāritūrus** is an intransitive verb that may be used absolutely or may take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb (§82). The fourth principal part, **pāritūrus** (about to obey), is a future active participle.
- **placeō, placere, placui, placitum** is an intransitive verb that may be used absolutely or may take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb (§82). **placeō** may be used impersonally to mean “seem good.” In public contexts it may mean “be resolved” (by the senate, etc.). When **placeō** is used impersonally, it often has a Subject Infinitive (§28).

Mihi placet rūs ire.

To go to the country is pleasing to me.

It is pleasing to me to go to the country.

Placuit populō bellum gerere.

It seemed good to the people to wage war.

- **morior, mori, mortuus sum** is an intransitive deponent verb. Compounds of **morior** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **MORIOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- The basic meaning of **patior, pati, passus sum** is “experience” a process or an action. It thus may mean “suffer” or “undergo” when the process or action is a difficult one. By extension **patior** may mean “allow” a person or thing (accusative) to perform an action (Object Infinitive).

Multa mala passus sum.

I have experienced (suffered) many bad things.

Pompeium Rōmam redire patiar.

I shall permit Pompey to return to Rome.

- The compounds of **sequor, sequi, secūtus sum** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **SEQUOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- **inquam**, “say,” is a defective verb with a few common indicative forms in the present and future active. In classical Latin **inquam** occurs rarely in other tenses of the indicative or subjunctive. It does not have an infinitive. SIX FORMS ONLY MUST BE MEMORIZED:

	Present Active Indicative	Future Active Indicative
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Singular</i>
1	inquam	
2	inquis	inquiēs
3	inquit	inquiet
	<i>Plural</i>	
3	inquiunt	

inquam is often used with a direct quotation. It is regularly placed after the first word or words of a sentence, often in order to emphasize the word(s) that precede(s) it.

“Vērum,” inquit, “ex mē audiēs.”

“The truth (a true thing),” he says, “you will hear from me.”

- **caecus, -a, -um** may have either an active sense—“blind” (i.e., not *seeing*)—or a passive one—“hidden,” “secret,” “dark” (i.e., not *being seen*). Many adjectives in Latin convey a variety of meanings based on an active and a passive idea in their root meaning.
- **audāx, audācis** is a third-declension adjective with one form in the nominative singular. The second part of the entry is the genitive singular, from which the stem **audāc-** is taken. **audāx** may mean “bold” in a good sense (daring, confident) or in a bad sense (reckless, rash). It may be applied to both people and things (plans, deeds).
- The adjective **īdem, eadem, idem** is formed by the addition of the suffix **-dem** to the demonstrative adjective **is, ea, id**. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING IRREGULAR DECLENSION.

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	īdem/eīdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	īsdem/eīsdem	īsdem/eīsdem	īsdem/eīsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	īsdem/eīsdem	īsdem/eīsdem	īsdem/eīsdem

The declension of **īdem**, **eadem**, **idem** follows the declension of **is**, **ea**, **id** with certain variations:

1. The masculine singular nominative **īdem** is formed by the addition of **-dem** to **is**. When the **-s-** is dropped, the **i-** is lengthened because of compensatory lengthening.
2. In the neuter singular nominative and accusative, the final **-d** of **id** is dropped before the ending **-dem**.
3. In the masculine and feminine singular accusative and the masculine, feminine, and neuter plural genitive, the final **-m** changes to an **-n-** before **-dem**.
4. In the masculine plural nominative and the masculine, feminine, and neuter plural dative and ablative, disyllabic forms of **is**, **ea**, **id**, **iī**, and **iīs** usually exhibit contraction of the two **i**'s (**īdem**, **īsdem**). The uncontracted forms **iīdem** and **iīsdem** occasionally occur.

“(The) same as” in Latin is usually expressed by a form of **īdem** followed by a relative clause (§78), sometimes with the ellipsis of the verb in the relative clause because it can be supplied from the main verb.

Socii dīcunt idem quod ego dīcēbam.

The allies are saying the same thing that I was saying.

Semper eadem sentiō quae tū (sentīs).

I always feels the same things that (as) you (feel).

- The irregular adverb **audacter** is more common than the regularly formed **audāciter**.
- The **quem** of the adverb **quemadmodum** may be either a relative adjective (§79)—“(according) to which manner,” “as,”—or, less commonly, an interrogative adjective—“how.” As a relative adverb, **quemadmodum** introduces a comparative clause, and a corresponding adverb (**sīc**, **ita**) often appears in the main clause. **quemadmodum** may be written as three separate words (**quem ad modum**).

Sīc tē amant filiī quemadmodum tū patrem mātremque.

So (your) sons love you as you (love) (your) father and mother.

- The **quō** in the phrase **quō modō** is an interrogative adjective (§81). **quō modō**, “in what manner,” “how,” is in origin an Ablative of Manner. **quō modō** may be written as one word (**quōmodō**).
- The adverb **quoque** is usually placed directly after the word that it qualifies.

Mihi quoque dōnum dedit.

To me also he gave a gift.

- **tandem** is an adverb that has a temporal meaning (finally, at last). With imperatives and questions it often expresses impatience or indignation (pray, I ask you, then).

Ad urbem tandem accessimus.

Finally we approached the city.

Cūr tandem hoc fēcistī?

Why, pray, did you do this thing?

	Derivatives	Cognates
modus	mode; modern ; modify ; mold ; mood	mete; medical ; meditate
mūnus	remunerate; municipal	common; immune
oculus	monocle; eyelet	optic ; autopsy; ophthalmologist
patior	passion ; passive ; patient; compassion	fiend
quī/quis	quibble ; quiddity ; quip	who; what; how; when ; whither ; where
sequor	sequence ; segue ; sect ; suitor ; persecute	espy ; specimen ; spectacle ; skeptic ; episcopal ; telescope

CHAPTER IX

Vocabulary

- annus, annī** *m.* year
➤ **iussum, iussī** *n.* order, command
- **nēmō, nēminis** *m. or f.* no one
nox, noctis, -ium *f.* night
tempus, temporis *n.* time
- **cōsulātus, cōsulātūs** *m.* consulship
➤ **domus, domūs** *f.* house, home
exercitus, exercitūs *m.* army
➤ **manus, manūs** *f.* hand; band, troop
➤ **mōtus, mōtūs** *m.* motion, movement; disturbance
➤ **senātus, senātūs** *m.* senate
- **aciēs, aciēi** *f.* sharp edge; keenness; battle line
➤ **diēs, diēi** *m. or f.* day
➤ **fidēs, fidēi** *f.* faith, trust; trustworthiness; loyalty
➤ **rēs, rei** *f.* thing; property; matter, affair; situation
➤ **rēs gestae, rērum gestārum** *f. pl.* accomplishments; history
➤ **rēs novae, rērum novārum** *f. pl.* revolution
➤ **rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae** *f.* republic
speciēs, *speciēi¹ *f.* appearance, aspect
- **hortor** (1-tr.) urge, encourage, exhort
➤ **imperō** (1-intr.) give an order (to); order, command (+ dat.)
➤ **parō** (1-tr.) prepare (for); get, obtain
- **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus** warn; remind; advise
- **pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus** push, drive (off)
➤ **quaerō, quaerere, quaesīi/quaesīvi, quaesītus** search for, seek, ask (for)
- pūblicus, -a, -um** public
- alius, alia, aliud** other, another (§86)
alter, altera, alterum the other (of two) (§86)
➤ **neuter, neutra, neutrum** neither (of two) (§86)
nūllus, -a, -um not any, no (§86)
sōlus, -a, -um alone, only (§86)
tōtus, -a, -um whole, entire; all (§86)
ūllus, -a, -um any (§86)
ūnus, -a, -um one; only (§86)
- **uter, utra, utrum** (interrog. adj.) which (of two) (§86)
- **aliter** (adv.) otherwise, in another way
➤ **iam** (adv.) (by) now; (by) then, already; presently
nē (conj.) *introduces negative Purpose clause, in order that . . . not (§87); introduces negative Indirect Command, that . . . not (§88)*
ob (prep. + acc.) on account of, because of
➤ **quam ob rem** (rel. or interrog. adv.) on account of which thing; therefore; why
➤ **quārē** (rel. or interrog. adv.) because of which thing; therefore; why
quō (rel. adv.) to where, whither
ubi (rel. adv.) where
unde (rel. adv.) from where, whence
ut (conj.) *introduces Purpose clause, in order that (§87); introduces Indirect Command, that (§88)*

1. The asterisk before the genitive singular of **speciēs** indicates that the form does not occur in the Latin that survives.

Vocabulary Notes

- The ablative singular of **iussum**, **iussī** *n.* is **iussū**, as if it were formed from a fourth-declension noun ***iussus**, ***iussūs** *m.* The ablative appears most frequently with a possessive adjective or a Subjective Genitive. Although **iussū** is an Ablative of Cause, it is usually translated with the English words “at” or “by.”

Militēs meō iussū ad prōvinciam ivērunt.
Iussū Caesaris incolae liberābuntur.

The soldiers went to the province at my command.
By the order of Caesar the inhabitants will be freed.

- **nēmō**, **nēminis** *m.* or *f.* occurs in the singular only. Although the genitive and ablative occasionally appear, usually forms of **nūllus** (**nūllius**, **nūllō**, or **nūllā**) replace the forms of **nēmō**. **nēmō** is formed by the addition of the negative particle **nē-** to the noun **homō**.
- **cōsulātus**, **cōsulātūs** *m.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-ātus** to the stem of the noun **cōsul**. It means the “office of consul” or the “consulship.”
- The noun **domus** appears here as a fourth-declension noun (**domus**, **domūs** *f.*), while it appeared in Chapter VI as a second-declension noun (**domus**, **domī** *f.*). It is declined in *both* declensions. However, some forms are more common than others. The declension of **domus** that follows lists the less common forms in parentheses.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
Nom./Voc.	domus	domūs
Gen.	domūs (domī)	domōrum / domuum
Dat.	domuī (domō)	domibus
Acc.	domum	domūs / domōs
Abl.	domō (domū)	domibus

There are only fourth-declension forms of the nominative, dative, and ablative plural. Second- and fourth-declension genitive and accusative plural forms are equally common. The locative is always **domī**.

- **manus**, **manūs** *f.* has two distinct meanings: “hand” (of a human) or an “armed force” of any size (band, troop).
- **mōtus**, **mōtūs** *m.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-tus** to a stem of the verb **moveō**. It means “motion” or “movement,” or, more concretely, the result of motion or movement, “disturbance.”
- **senātus**, **senātūs** *m.*, “senate,” is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-ātus** to the stem of the substantive **senex** (old man). The **senātus** was the highest deliberating body in Rome. One became a senator by winning election to one of the higher political offices (quaestorship, praetorship, consulship). All senators were members of the senate for life unless formally removed. Sometimes the genitive singular form **senātī** appears, as if **senātus** were a second-declension noun.
- **aciēs**, **aciēī** *f.* means the “sharp edge” of a weapon and, by extension, the sharp edge or “keenness” of one’s eyes or “acuity” of one’s mind. It is also used of a “battle line” or “battle formation” of troops.
- **diēs**, **diēī** is regularly masculine, but when **diēs** refers to a festival day, a day appointed for a business transaction, or the date of a letter, it is usually feminine.
- **fidēs**, **fideī** *f.* can be felt toward others or recognized by others in oneself. One has “trust” or “faith” in a person or a thing expressed by a Dative of Reference, less often an Objective Genitive. One’s “trustworthiness” inspires “confidence” in others, and one’s “loyalty” is a sense of duty toward other persons or things.

Semper virō bonō fidem habēmus.

We always have trust for (in) a good man.

Sociī fidem Rōmānam atque arma laudābant.

The allies were praising Roman trustworthiness and weapons.

Superātī in fidē maneant.

Let the conquered men remain in loyalty.

- Like its most common English translation, “thing,” **rēs**, **reī** *f.* is a noun that may convey a wide range of abstract and concrete ideas. The vocabulary entry for this word offers five common meanings: 1. “thing,” something that exists or occurs; 2. “property” or “wealth,” something that belongs to a person or family; 3. “matter” or “affair,” something that occupies one’s attention; 4. “activity” or “practice” in a particular field; and 5. “situation,” the state of affairs at a particular moment. **rēs** appears in several Latin idioms, including: **rēs gestae** (things having been accomplished), “accomplishments,” “history”; **rēs novae** (new things), “revolution”; and **rēs pūblica**, “republic” (cf. English commonwealth).

- **hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum** is a transitive verb that may introduce an Indirect Command (§88).

Caesar suōs hortātus est nē timērent.

Caesar urged his own men that they not fear.

- **imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum** is an intransitive verb that may take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb (§82). It may also introduce an Indirect Command (§88).

Caesar suīs imperāvīt nē fugerent.

Caesar commanded his own men that they not flee.

- **parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus** means “prepare (for);” “get,” “obtain.” In addition to a wide variety of direct objects, **parō** may appear with an Object Infinitive.

Catīlina Cicerōnī insidiās parābat.

Catiline was preparing treachery for Cicero.

Caesar bellum parat.

Caesar prepares for war.

Amīcōs facile parābit.

She will easily get friends.

Quis pācem parāre nōn optet?

Who would not desire to obtain peace?

- **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus** may introduce an Indirect Command (§88). Compounds of **moneō** do not exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **MONEŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

- **pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus** has a reduplicated third principal part (cf. **dō**).

- **quaerō, quaerere, quaesīi/quaesīvī, quaesītus** may introduce an Indirect Command (§88). **quaerō** has two third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. In the second person singular and plural perfect active indicative the short **-i-** of the stem **quaesi-** always contracts with the appropriate endings (**quaesīstī, quaesīstis**). The person from whom something is sought is expressed by **ā/ab** + ablative (cf. **petō**).

Marcus ā mē quaesīvīt nē frātrem ad bellum mitterem.

Marcus asked from me that I not send (his) brother to war.

Marcus asked me not to send (his) brother to war.

- **neuter, neutra, neutrum** is an adjective formed by the addition of the negative particle **nē-** to **uter**. It thus means “neither (of two).” A noun that is neuter is *neither* masculine *nor* feminine.

- **uter, utra, utrum** is an interrogative adjective that means “which (of two)?” It assumes that there are only two possible answers to the question it poses. **uter** is often used substantively.

In utrō oppidō vīvis?

In which town (of two [towns]) do you live?

Utrum vidēre optās?

Which (man or thing) (of two) do you desire to see?

- **aliter** is an irregular adverb formed from the adjective **alius, alia, aliud**.

- **iam** is an adverb that may indicate a variety of moments in time depending on the tense of the verb and the context in which it appears. It may mean “now” as opposed to any other moment in time. It may mark the completion of an action before the time indicated by the verb: “(by) now” with a present time verb, “(by) then” or “already” with a past time verb. When **iam** appears with a future tense, it often emphasizes the time immediately approaching and may be translated “presently.”

Accipe iam haec dōna.

Receive now these gifts.

Hic iam mihi hostis est.

This man is (by) now an enemy to me.

Carmen iam perfēcerat.

By then (already) he had completed (his) poem.

Iam veniet meus amīcus.

My friend will come presently.

When **iam** follows any negation, translations such as “no longer,” “not any longer” may be used.

Nōn iam illī pācem cupiunt.

No longer (Not any longer) do those men desire peace.

- The **quam** of the adverb **quam ob rem** may be either a relative adjective (§79)—“on account of which thing,” “therefore”—or an interrogative adjective (§81), “on account of which thing,” “why.” **quam ob rem** may be written as a single word (**quamobrem**).

- The **quā** of the adverb **quārē** may be either a relative adjective (§79)—“because of which thing,” “therefore,”—or an interrogative adjective (§81), “because of which thing,” “why.” **quārē** was originally an Ablative of Cause. **quārē** may be written as two words (**quā rē**).

	Derivatives	Cognates
alius	alias; alien; hidalgo	alarm; alligator; else; allegory
alter	alter; alternate; subaltern	parallax
diēs	diurnal; journal	Jupiter; Zeus
fidēs	fealty; faith; infidel	confide; defy; abide
manus	manacle; manage; manuscript; maintain; maneuver	emancipate; mandate; command
parō	prepare; parade; apparatus	parent
pellō	pulse; push; repel; compel	polish; anvil; felt
rēs	republic; reify; re; real	
speciēs	species; especial	espy; specimen; spectacle; skeptical; episcopal; telescope
tempus	temporary; tempest	

CHAPTER X

Vocabulary

- **lēgātus, lēgātī** *m.* legate, envoy; lieutenant
- **nātus, nātī** *m.* son

- **dux, ducis** *m. or f.* leader
- **finis, finis, -ium** *m. or f.* end, limit, boundary; *pl.*, territory
- **genus, generis** *n.* descent, origin; race, stock; kind, sort
- **labor, labōris** *m.* work, labor; effort, hardship
- **mōs, mōris** *m.* custom, practice; *pl.* (*some-times*), character
- **opus, operis** *n.* work
 - **opus est** (idiom) there is need of (+ *abl.* or *nom.*)
- **ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis** *f.* oration, speech
 - **ōrātiōnem habēre** (idiom) to make a speech
 - **ōrātor, ōrātōris** *m.* speaker, orator
- **pectus, pectoris** *n. sing. or pl.*, chest, breast; heart

- **cāsus, cāsūs** *m.* fall; occurrence; chance, misfortune
- **metus, metūs** *m.* fear, dread

- **spes, speī** *f.* hope

- **quīdam, quaedam, quiddam** (*indef. pron.*) (a) certain person, (a) certain thing
- **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam** (*indef. adj.*) (a) certain

- **oppugnō** (1-tr.) attack
- **servō** (1-tr.) save, preserve
- **stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus** stand; stand fast, endure

- **dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvī, dēlētus** destroy

- **cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus** fall; die
- **nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum** be born
- **nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus** come to know, learn, recognize; *perfect*, know
 - **cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus** come to know, learn, recognize; *perfect*, know
- **proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum** set out, set forth
- **ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum** use; experience; enjoy (+ *abl.*)

- **perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus** suffer, endure; report
- **referō, referre, rettulī, relātus** bring back; report

- **aequus, -a, -um** level, even; equitable, just; calm, tranquil
 - **inīquus, -a, -um** uneven; inequitable, unjust
- **honestus, -a, -um** honorable, respectable
- **medius, -a, -um** middle (of); *neut. subst.*, midst; the open
- **nōtus, -a, -um** known, well-known; familiar

- **apud** (*prep. + acc.*) at the house of, in the presence of, among
- **contrā** (*adv.*) on the contrary, in opposition; in turn (*prep. + acc.*) against, contrary to; facing
- **magnopere** (*adv.*) greatly
- **quīn** (*conj.*) *introduces Relative Clause of Characteristic, who/that . . . not (§94)*
- **satis/sat** (*adv.*) enough, sufficiently; (*indeclinable neut. subst.*) enough

Vocabulary Notes

- ▶ **lēgātus, lēgātī** *m.* may refer to a “legate” or “envoy” involved in matters of diplomacy. It may also be used to identify an assistant to an army commander or provincial governor (lieutenant, legate).
- ▶ **nātus, nātī** *m.* means “a male having been born” and is a substantive of the perfect passive participle of **nāscor**. Less common is the feminine substantive **nāta, nātae** *f.*, “daughter.”
- ▶ **dux, ducis** *m.* or *f.* may mean a “leader” in the sense of a “guide,” but it is commonly used for a political or military “leader.”
- ▶ The gender of **finis, finis, -ium** is regularly masculine, but in early Latin and in poetry the singular only is sometimes treated as feminine. In the plural, **finis** may refer to the “boundary” of a territory or country and, by extension, the “territory” that is enclosed by boundaries.
- ▶ **genus, generis** *n.* is derived from the PIE root ***genE-** (give birth, bear). **genus** may refer to an individual’s “origin” or “birth.” It may refer more broadly to a “race” or “class” of people or things that arise from a single origin (human race, race of the gods, Greek stock). When used of abstract things, it often means “sort” or “kind,” the abstract class to which someone or something belongs.
- ▶ **labor, labōris** *m.* means the abstract concept of “work” or “the act of working” (labor). **labor** may also mean the “effort” or “hardship” required to accomplish something.
- ▶ **mōs, mōris** *m.* means “custom,” an established practice as opposed to an enacted law. The plural **mōrēs** may mean “customs,” but it may also refer to the collective habits of an individual and thus may be translated “character.” The phrases **ex mōre** and **dē mōre** mean “according to custom.”
- ▶ **opus, operis** *n.* may mean something that needs to be done (work [to do]) or something that has been accomplished ([piece of] work, product, achievement). **opus** may convey the sense of how much is required to accomplish something (effort), and it is often used for the products of artistic endeavor (poetic work).

Hoc opus perficere nōn poterit.
Clāra sunt opera poētārum.

He will not be able to complete this work.
The works of the poets are famous.

- ▶ The idiom **opus est** most often takes an ablative to express the thing needed. This ablative is translated with the English preposition “of.” It is also common for a Dative of Reference to occur with this idiom.

Mihi opus est magnā diligentīā.

There is need to me of great diligence.
I need great diligence.

Less frequently, the thing needed is the Nominative, Subject, and **opus** functions as a Predicate Nominative. A Nominative, Subject occurs most often when the subject is a neuter pronoun.

Hoc mihi opus est.

This thing is a need to me.
There is need to me of this thing.
I need this thing.

Rarely **opus est** takes a genitive of the thing needed.

- ▶ **ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis** *f.* may mean the abstract notion of “speaking,” the power of “speech,” or a particular “speech” or “oration.”
- ▶ **pectus, pectoris** *n.*, “chest,” “breast”; “heart,” often appears in the plural in poetry with the same meanings as the singular.
- ▶ **cāsus, cāsūs** *m.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-tus** to a stem of the verb **cadō**. The **-t-** of the suffix assimilated to the **-s-** of the stem **cās-** and was then lost. In addition to its basic meaning of “fall,” **cāsus** refers to the “occurrence” of an event, usually by chance (accident), which may be positive (fortune) or negative (misfortune).
- ▶ **quīdam, quaedam, quiddam** is an *indefinite pronoun* formed by the addition of the suffix **-dam** to the relative pronoun **quī, quae, quod**. An *indefinite pronoun* is a pronoun that does not define or specify the person or thing for which it stands. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING IRREGULAR DECLENSION.

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quiddam	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

The declension of **quīdam** follows the declension of **quī**, **quae**, **quod** with certain variations:

1. The neuter singular nominative and accusative are formed by the addition of **-dam** to **quid**.
2. In the masculine and feminine singular accusative and the masculine, feminine, and neuter plural genitive, the final **-m** changes to an **-n-** before **-dam**.

- **quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam** is an *indefinite adjective* formed by the addition of the suffix **-dam** to the relative pronoun **quī**, **quae**, **quod**. An *indefinite adjective* is an adjective that does not define or specify the person or thing it modifies. The declension of **quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam** is identical with that of **quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quiddam** except in the neuter singular nominative and accusative (cf. **quoddam** with **quiddam**).

Quīdam Rōmam vēnit.

A certain man came to Rome. (indefinite pronoun)

Poēta quīdam Rōmam vēnit.

A certain poet came to Rome. (indefinite adjective)

- **oppugnō**, **oppugnāre**, **oppugnāvī**, **oppugnātus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ob-** to **pugnō**. Unlike **pugnō**, **oppugnō** is a transitive verb.

Incolae oppidum oppugnant.

The inhabitants are attacking the town.

- **stō**, **stāre**, **stetī**, **stātūrus** is an irregular intransitive first-conjugation verb. The third principal part exhibits reduplication, and the fourth principal part has a short **-a-**. In addition to its basic meaning of “stand,” **stō** may also mean “remain standing,” “endure,” or “last.”
- **cadō**, **cadere**, **cecidī**, **cāsūrus** is an intransitive verb. The third principal part, **cecidī**, exhibits reduplication. In addition to its basic meaning of “fall,” **cadō** may also mean “cease” (when the subject is winds, noise, etc.). It may also have the extended meaning of “die” or “perish.”
- **nāscor**, **nāscī**, **nātus sum** is an intransitive deponent verb. Compounds of **nāscor** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **NĀSCOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- **nōscō**, **nōscere**, **nōvī**, **nōtus** is derived from the PIE root ***gneO-** (know). It is an *inchoative* (< **incohō**, start) or *inceptive* (< **incipiō**, begin) verb. An *inchoative* verb indicates that an action is *beginning to occur*. All verbs whose first and second principal parts end in **-scō** and **-scere** are in origin inchoative verbs. The basic meaning of **nōscō** is “begin to know” and thus “learn.” The *perfect* indicative of many inchoative verbs is often equivalent to an English *present* tense since the perfect tense indicates the *completion* of the action of the verb. **nōvī** means “I have learned” and thus “I know.” The *pluperfect* forms may be translated as if they were *imperfect*, and the *future perfect* forms as if they were *future*. On occasion, the perfect tense may be translated “have learned” or “learned,” but the meaning “know” is more common. When **nōscō** in the perfect tenses takes an infinitive, it means “know how.”

Nātūram hominum nōscere optō.

I desire to learn the nature of human beings.

Lēgēs huius urbis nōvistī?

Do you know [= Have you learned] the laws of this city?

Nōverāsne lēgēs huius urbis?

Did you know (progressive [=Had you learned]) the laws of this city?

The present forms of **nōscō** may mean “recognize” or “become acquainted with” a person. The perfect forms may mean “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” a person or an object of study.

Cicerōnem nōn nōvī.

I do not know (am not acquainted with) Cicero.

- **cognōscō**, **cognōscere**, **cognōvī**, **cognitus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **com-** to **nōscō**. It exhibits irregular vowel weakening in the fourth principal part. **cognōscō** is a strengthened form of **nōscō** with all the same meanings.

- ▶ **proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum** is an intransitive third-conjugation deponent verb. In origin an inchoative verb, **proficīscor** means “set out” or “set forth” on a journey or from a certain starting point.
- ▶ **ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum** is an intransitive verb that takes an *ablative* of the thing used or experienced. The ablative is translated as a direct object in English. Compounds of **ūtor** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **ŪTOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

Tuō cōnsiliō ūtar.

I shall use your advice.

Utinam bonā nunc fortūnā ūterēmur.

If only we were experiencing good fortune now.

- ▶ **perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **per-** to **ferō**. **perferō** regularly means “endure” or “suffer” (hardships, troubles), but it may also mean “report” or “express.”
- ▶ **referō, referre, rettulī, relātus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **re-** to **ferō**. Although **referō** may mean “carry back,” it most commonly means “report.”
- ▶ From the basic physical meaning of **aequus, -a, -um** (level or even) come its more expanded senses of “fair” or “just” (level in a legal or political context) and “calm” or “tranquil” (i.e., level-headed). **inīquus, -a, -um** is a compound adjective formed by the addition of the prefix **in-** (not) to **aequus**.
- ▶ **honestus, -a, -um** is an adjective derived from the noun **honor, honōris m.**, “(political) office”; “honor,” “repute.” In the strictest sense **honestus** describes a person who is “honorable” or “respectable” because he has held a public office. **honestus** has a more extended sense of being “morally honorable” or “respectable.”
- ▶ **medius, -a, -um** expresses the notion of the “middle of” a place by modifying that place. It usually appears before the noun it modifies. As a neuter substantive, **medius** is often translated “midst” or “the open.”

Militēs in mediā urbe ā rēge positī sunt.

Soldiers were placed in the middle of the city by the king.

Postquam populō dixit, ē mediō discessit.

After he spoke to the people, he departed (out) from (their) midst.

Cōsul tōtam rem in mediō posuit.

The consul placed the whole matter in the open.

- ▶ The fourth principal part of **nōscō, nōtus, -a, -um** (having been learned) often appears as an adjective meaning “known,” “well-known,” or “familiar.” The adjective **nōtus, -a, -um** often appears with a Dative of Reference.
- ▶ **apud** is a preposition that takes the accusative. It may mean “at the house of,” “in the presence of,” “among,” or “with” (individuals, groups), and “in (the writings of)” (authors, books). Context usually makes clear the appropriate translation.

Cicerō apud frātremanet.

Cicero is staying at the house of/with (his) brother.

Haec apud Rōmānōs sunt iūra.

These are the laws among the Romans.

Haec verba apud Cicerōnem lēgī.

I have read the following words in (the writings of) Cicero.

- ▶ **contrā** is an adverb that is often used to emphasize that a statement or action opposes an earlier one (on the contrary, in opposition). Sometimes the second action is understood to be reciprocal rather than in opposition (in turn).

Tibi malus vidētur? Mihi contrā bonus.

Does he seem bad to you? To me, on the contrary, (he seems) good.

Filius patrem amat, pater contrā filium.

The son loves the father, the father in turn (loves) the son.

contrā is also a preposition that takes the accusative. It may have meanings analogous to those of the adverb (against, contrary to), or, particularly with verbs that mean “stand,” it may mean “facing.”

Contrā hostēs ivimus.

We went against the enemies.

Hostēs contrā nostrōs stābant.

The enemies were standing facing our men.

- ▶ The adverb **magnopere** is in origin the Ablative of Manner **magnō opere**, “with great work,” and it is sometimes written as two words.

- **satis** may be an indeclinable neuter substantive, which is often followed by a Partitive Genitive, or an adverb. The shortened form **sat** is more common in poetry.

Satis agricolae est ager bonus.

A good field is enough for the farmer. (subst.)

Satisne cōpiarum tibi est?

Do you have enough (of) troops? (subst. + Partitive Gen.)

Satisne labōrābās?

Were you working enough? (adverb)

	Derivatives	Cognates
cadō	cadaver ; cadence ; cascade ; case ; chance ; accident ; occasion ; deciduous	
finis	define ; final ; fine ; finish	
genus	genuine ; gender ; genre ; engine ; germ ; genital ; malign	kind; king ; genocide ; gene
mōs	moral ; morose ; mores	mood
nōscō	notice ; notorious ; notify	know; can; ken; diagnosis ; noble
cognōscō	cognition ; recognition	
satis	satisfy ; saturate ; satire	sad
spēs		despair ; prosper , speed
ūtor	use ; utility ; utensil	

CHAPTER XI

Vocabulary

- ▶ **audācia, audāciae** *f.* boldness; recklessness, audacity
- ▶ **campus, campī** *m.* (flat) plain
- ▶ **castra, castrōrum** *n. pl.* (military) camp
- ▶ **mūrus, mūrī** *m.* wall
- ▶ **paulum, *paulī**¹ *n.* small amount, a little
- ▶ **signum, signī** *n.* sign, signal; standard
- ▶ **tēlum, tēlī** *n.* spear; weapon

- ▶ **ignis, ignis, -ium** *m.* fire
- ▶ **imperātor, imperātōris** *m.* commander, general
- ▶ **legiō, legiōnis** *f.* legion
- ▶ **lūx, lūcis** *f.* light, daylight
 - ▶ **prīmā lūce** (idiom) at dawn
- ▶ **maiōrēs, maiōrum** *m. pl.* ancestors

- ▶ **sēnsus, sēnsūs** *m.* perception, feeling; sense

- arbitror** (1-tr.) judge, consider, think
- putō** (1-tr.) think, suppose

- ▶ **soleō, solēre, solitus sum** be accustomed

- ▶ **crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus** trust, believe (+ dat.)
- ▶ **iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus** throw; utter; lay, establish
 - ▶ **ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus** throw out, expel

- ▶ **loquor, loquī, locūtus sum** speak, talk

- ▶ **inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus** find, discover
- ▶ **sciō, scīre, sciī/scīvī, scītus** know
 - ▶ **nesciō, nescīre, nesciī/nescīvī, nescītus** not know

- ▶ **pereō, perīre, perī, peritūrus** pass away, be destroyed; perish, die

- longus, -a, -um** long; far; long-standing; far-reaching
- ▶ **summus, -a, -um** highest; top (of); last, final

- brevis, breve** short, brief
- humilis, humile** humble
- sapiēns, sapientis** wise
- ▶ **similis, simile** similar (+ gen. or dat.)
 - ▶ **dissimilis, dissimile** dissimilar, unlike, different (+ gen. or dat.)

- ▶ **diū** (adv.) for a long time
- fore = futūrus, -a, -um esse** (§105)
- ▶ **igitur** (postpositive conj.) therefore
- longē** (adv.) a long way, far; by far
- ▶ **parum** (indeclinable subst.) too little, not enough
 - (adv.) too little, inadequately
- prīmum** (adv.) first; for the first time
- quam prīmum**, as soon as possible
- quam** (adv.) as, how; (conj.) than (§112)

1. The asterisk before the genitive singular form of **paulum** indicates that the form does not occur in the Latin that survives.

Vocabulary Notes

- **audācia, audāciae** *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-ia** to the stem of **audāx**. **audācia** may have a positive sense (boldness, confidence), but more often has a negative sense of excessive boldness (recklessness, audacity).
- **campus, campī** *m.* is a flat expanse of land or “plain.” The **Campus Martius** (< **Martius, -a, -um**, of or belonging to Mars) was the plain just outside the sacred boundary of Rome, on which the Roman troops trained, Roman armies mustered before entering the city in triumph, and Roman citizens gathered in assembly for elections. **campus** without an accompanying adjective may refer to the *Campus Martius*.
- Although **castra, castrōrum** *n. pl.* is plural in form, it has a singular meaning (military encampment). **castra** appears in two common idioms: **castra pōnere**, “to pitch or make camp” and **castra movēre**, “to break camp.”
- **paulum, *paulī** *n.* appears in the nominative, accusative, and ablative singular only. It often functions as an Ablative of Degree of Difference (§112). It is also commonly found with a Partitive Genitive.

Paulō ante discesserant.

They had departed earlier by a little (a little earlier).

Paulum ei erat pecūniae.

There was a little of money to him.

He had a little (of) money.

- **signum, signī** *n.* may mean any sort of mark or “sign.” It may also mean “signal” or, in military contexts, a “standard” identifying a unit of the Roman army.
- **tēlum, tēlī** *n.* originally referred only to a throwing weapon (spear, javelin, dart), but its use was soon extended to include other weapons. It may also refer to the shaft of a throwing weapon as opposed to the point.
- The ablative singular of **ignis, ignis, -ium** *m.* is usually **ignī** (by analogy with *neuter* third-declension *i*-stem nouns). In poetry and in post-Augustan Latin, the regular form **igne** also occurs.
- **imperātor, imperātōris** *m.* is formed by the addition of the suffix **-tor** to the present stem of the verb **imperō**. An **imperātor** is one who gives orders, and the word is most often used of a military “commander” or “general.” It is also an honorific title granted to a victorious commander either by his troops or by the senate.
- **legiō, legiōnis** *f.* was the largest unit of the Roman army. Its size ranged at various periods of the Roman Republic and Empire from 4,200 to 6,000 men.
- **lūx, lūcis** *f.* may mean “light” generally or “daylight” (the light of the sun). It may also mean “light” more metaphorically (mental illumination, light [of hope], etc.). **primā lūce**, literally “at first light,” is an Ablative of Time When.
- **maiōrēs, maiōrum** *m. pl.* is a substantive of the comparative adjective **maior, maius** (§111).
- **sēnsus, sēnsūs** *m.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-tus** to a stem of the verb **sentīō**. The **-t-** of the suffix assimilated to the **-s-** of the stem **sēns-** and was then lost.
- **soleō, solēre, solitus sum** is an intransitive semideponent verb. It regularly takes a Complementary Infinitive.

Bonus sine irā dicere solet.

A good man is accustomed to speak(ing) without anger.

- **crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus** may be transitive or intransitive. When transitive, it often takes a neuter pronoun as a direct object. When **crēdō** is intransitive, it may take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb. In the passive, **crēdō** may have a personal subject. **crēdō** may also introduce an Indirect Statement (§107).

Tē amō, crēde mihi.

I love you, believe me. (Dative with an Intransitive Verb)

Crēdunt id quod vident.

They believe that thing that they see. (d.o.)

Crēditur captus esse.

He is believed to have been captured. (passive voice, personal subject)

Crēdisne mē tē amāre?

Do you believe that I love you? (Indirect Statement)

- The first letter of the verb **iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus** is a *consonantal i* and is thus pronounced like English *y*. **iaciō** may mean “throw” or “cast” in a literal sense (rocks, javelins, lightning bolts) or a metaphorical one (injury, abuse, ridicule, remarks, kisses). It may also mean “lay” or “establish” (foundations, walls, ramparts).
- **ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ē-** to **iaciō**. It exhibits regular vowel weakening in the first, second, and fourth principal parts. In the first two principal parts (and all forms made from them), the first **-i-** is pronounced as a consonantal **-i-** followed by the vocalic **-i-**, as if

they were spelled *ēiiciō, *ēiicere. In the third principal part (**ēiēcī**), the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to **-ē-**. The **-i-** in the third and fourth principal parts is consonantal. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF **IACIŌ** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF **ĒICIŌ**. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **IACIŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

- ▶ **loquor, loquī, locūtus sum** often appears absolutely. In classical Latin, the person with whom one speaks is expressed by **cum** and a person in the ablative. Except in early Latin **loquor** does *not* take a Dative of Indirect Object. Compounds of **loquor, loquī, locūtus sum** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **LOQUOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- ▶ **inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of **in-** to **veniō** and does *not* exhibit vowel weakening. Unlike **veniō**, **inveniō** is a transitive verb.
- ▶ **sciō, scīre, scī/scīvī, scītus** means “know” in the broadest sense of the word. In particular, **sciō** means “know” facts. **sciō** has two third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. In the second person singular and plural perfect active indicative the short **-i-** of the stem **sci-** always contracts with the appropriate endings (**scīstī, scīstis**). When **sciō** takes an infinitive, it means “know how.”

Poēta causās rērum scit.
Caesar vincere scivit.

The poet knows the causes of things.
Caesar knew how to conquer.

The present active imperative forms of **sciō** almost never appear in the Latin that survives, but this verb uses instead the future active imperative forms **scītō** (singular) and **scītōte** (plural) with present meanings.

- ▶ **nesciō, nescīre, nescī/nescīvī, nescītus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the negative prefix **ne-** to **sciō**. **nesciō** has two third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. In the second person singular and plural perfect active indicative the short **-i-** of the stem **nesci-** always contracts with the appropriate endings (**nescīstī, nescīstis**). When **nesciō** takes an infinitive, it means “not know how.”
- ▶ **pereō, perīre, perī, perīturus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **per-** to the irregular verb **eō**. **pereō** conjugates exactly as **eō** *except* that it has only *one* third principal part. **pereō** may be used synonymously for **morior** and be translated “perish” or “die.” When its subject is not human, **pereō** may mean “pass away” or “be destroyed.” The first person singular present active subjunctive may be used as an Optative, future wish capable of fulfillment, to assert something strongly. The first person (singular and plural) perfect active indicative—and occasionally other forms—may be used hyperbolically to express panic (I am/We are destroyed/lost/done for).

Multī militum perierunt.
Magnae urbēs cum moenibus pereunt.
Peream nisi ista mē movent verba.
Ingeniō meō perī!

Many of the soldiers died.
Great cities with their (city) walls pass away.
May I die if those words do not move me.
I am lost because of my own talent!

- ▶ In addition to “highest,” “final,” and “last,” the irregular superlative adjective **summus, -a, -um** may mean “top of” when it modifies a place: **summa moenia**, “the top of the city walls” (subj., d.o.).
- ▶ **similis, simile** and **dissimilis, dissimile** may take either a genitive or a dative expressing that which something is “similar” or “dissimilar” to.

Patris similis est hic filius.
Quid illī simile bellō fuit?

This son is similar to (his) father.
What was similar to that war?

- ▶ The temporal adverb **diū** often appears in the phrase **iam diū**, “for a long time now/already.” When this phrase occurs with a verb in the present tense, the present tense reports an action that has been going on for some time and is still going on. When this phrase occurs with a verb in the imperfect tense, the imperfect tense reports an action that had been going on for some time and was still going on (§90). These uses of the present and imperfect tenses require special English translations.

Hoc iam diū dicō.
Hoc iam diū dicēbam.

I have been saying this thing for a long time now.
I had been saying this thing for a long time already.

- In classical Latin, **igitur** is most frequently a postpositive conjunction. (In the historians Sallust and Tacitus, however, **igitur** is nearly always placed first.) **igitur** is used to join a sentence with a preceding one to indicate the consequence or inference of a preceding idea or series of ideas.
- Like **satis**, **parum** may be an indeclinable neuter substantive or an adverb. While **satis** means “enough,” **parum** describes what falls short of enough (too little).

	Derivatives	Cognates
audācia	audacity	
brevis	brief; abbreviate	merry; pretzel
campus	campus	
crēdō	credo; credit; credible; miscreant	heart; discord; courage; cardiac
iaciō	inject; adjective; jet	catheter
ignis	ignite; igneous	
longus	longitude; lunge; longevity; purloin	long; linger; belong; Lent
loquor	loquacious; circumlocution; soliloquy	
lūx	Lucifer; luculent	light
mūrus	mural	
parum		poor; filly; puer
putō	compute	
sciō	science; prescient	shyster; schism; rescind; shed
signum	sign; signal ; seal	
similis	similar; assimilate; resemble	simplex; simple; same; single; sandhi; seem

CHAPTER XII

Vocabulary

- **grātia, grātiaē** *f.* favor, kindness; gratitude, thanks
- **littera, litteraē** *f.* letter (of the alphabet); *pl.*, letter, epistle
- **memoria, memoriaē** *f.* memory

- **dubium, dubiū** *n.* doubt, hesitation (§117)

- **gēns, gentis, -ium** *f.* nation, people; family
- **fors, fortis, -ium** *f.* chance, luck
- **mōns, montis, -ium** *m.* mountain
- **rūmor, rūmōris** *m.* rumor

- **fās** (indeclinable noun) *n.* (what is divinely) right; (what is) permitted
 - **nefās** (indeclinable noun) *n.* (what is divinely) forbidden; sacrilege

- **dubitō** (1-tr.) hesitate; doubt (§117)
- **ōrō** (1-tr.) beg (for)
- **rogō** (1-tr.) ask (for)
- **spērō** (1-tr.) hope (for)

- **cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus** accomplish, complete
- **oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum** forget (+ gen.)
- **praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus** put in charge (of)

- **īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus** carry (into); inflict (on)
- **praefērō, praeferre, praetulī, praelātus** prefer
- **praesum, praesesse, praefuī, praefutūrus** be in charge (of), be in command (of)

- **volō, velle, voluī**, — be willing, want, wish (§119)
 - **mālō, mälle, māluī**, — want more, prefer (§119)
 - **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī**, — be unwilling, not want, not wish (§119)

- **dignus, -a, -um** worthy (of) (+ abl.)
 - **indignus, -a, -um** unworthy (of) (+ abl.)
- **dubius, -a, -um** doubtful (§117)

- an** (conj.) *introduces an alternative question, or (§114); introduces an Indirect Question, whether (§116)*
- **cum** (conj.) when; since; although (§118)
- **modo** (adv.) only, just; now, just now
- necne** (conj.) *in Indirect Question, or not (§116)*
- nōnne** (interrog. particle) *introduces a direct question expecting the answer “yes” (§114)*
- num** (interrog. particle) *introduces a direct question expecting the answer “no” (§114); introduces an Indirect Question, whether (§116)*
- praeter** (prep. + acc.) beyond; except
- quīn** (conj.) *introduces Doubling clause, that (§117)*
- quō** (interrog. adv.) to where, whither
- **tum** or **tunc** (adv.) then, at that time
- unde** (interrog. adv.) from where, whence
- utrum** (interrog. particle) *introduces the first question of a double direct question or Indirect Question (§114, §116)*
- utrum . . . an . . .** whether . . . or . . .
- ne . . . an . . .**
- . . . **an . . .** (§114, §116)

Vocabulary Notes

- **grātia, grātia** *f.* may mean the “favor” or “kindness” that one shows to another or the “gratitude” one feels in return for a favor or kindness. Both the singular and the plural may be used in a variety of idioms: **grātiā agere**, “to give thanks”; **grātiām** or **grātiās habere**, “to have gratitude.”
- In the singular **littera, litterae** *f.* refers to a “letter” of the alphabet. In the plural it most often means a single “epistle” or “letter.” An adjective of quantity or number may be added to indicate more than one letter.

Filiō litterās misī.

I sent a letter to (my) son.

Filiō multās litterās misī.

I sent many letters to (my) son.

The plural of **littera** may also mean, more abstractly, “(humane) letters,” “literature.”

- **dubium, dubii** *n.* is a substantive of the adjective **dubius, -a, -um**. It regularly appears with an Indirect Question or a Doubting clause (§117).
- **gēns, gentis, -ium** *f.* may refer to a collective “people” or “nation.” Among Roman citizens, a **gēns** was a group of families that shared the same **nōmen** (name) (§16). **gēns** may also refer to an individual family. In the plural, **gentēs** may mean “nations of the world” or “the human race” as a whole.
- **rūmor, rūmōris** *m.* may mean “rumor” or “gossip.” The phrase **rūmor est** introduces an Indirect Statement (§107).

Rūmor est Caesarem venīre.

There is a rumor that Caesar is coming.

- **fās** is an indeclinable neuter noun. Its strict meaning is what is “right” according to divine law, as opposed to **iūs**, which indicates “right” according to human law. It may also be used of “(what is) permitted” or “(what is) lawful” in a more general sense. It commonly occurs in parenthetical remarks, such as **sī fās (est)** (if it is right). It is also often used as a Predicate Nominative or Predicate Accusative.

Fās est hoc facere.

To do this thing is right.

- **nefās** is an indeclinable neuter noun formed by the addition of the negative prefix **ne-** to **fās**. Thus its strict meaning is what is an “offense” according to divine law (sacrilege).
- When the verb **dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātus** means “hesitate,” it is often followed by a Complementary Infinitive. When it means “doubt,” it regularly introduces an Indirect Question or a Doubting clause (§117).
- **ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus** takes a **double accusative**; that is, it may have *two* Accusative, Direct Objects, the *person begged* and the *thing begged for*. It may also introduce an Indirect Command.

Civēs deōs pācem ōrant.

The citizens beg the gods for peace.

Militēs ōrēmus nē discēdant.

Let us beg the soldiers that they not depart.

- **rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus** may introduce an Indirect Question (§116) or an Indirect Command. It may take an Accusative, Direct Object expressing the *person asked* or the *thing asked for*. Like **ōrō**, **rogō** may take a double accusative.

Militēs auxilium rogēmus.

Let us ask the soldiers for aid.

- **spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus** is a *denominative* verb formed from the noun **spēs**. **spērō** may be followed by an Accusative, Direct Object, or it may introduce an Indirect Statement.
- **cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **con-** to **faciō**. It may mean “accomplish” or “complete” (tasks, duties, written works, periods of time). It is a synonym of **perficiō**. **cōnficiō** may also mean “wear out” or “kill.”
- **oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum** may introduce an Indirect Statement. It often takes a Genitive with Expressions of Remembering and Forgetting (Objective Genitive) (cf. **meminī**). **oblīvīscor** may also take an Accusative, Direct Object, particularly when the object is a neuter pronoun. When it takes an Object Infinitive, **oblīvīscor** may mean “forget” or “forget how.”

Numquam oblīvīscar illius noctis.

I shall never forget that night. (Objective Genitive)

Omnia oblīvīscēbar.

I was forgetting all things. (Accusative, Direct Object)

Miser poēta scribere oblītus est.

The wretched poet forgot how to write. (Object Infinitive)

- **praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **prae-** to **faciō**. **praeficiō** is a transitive verb and also takes a Dative with a Compound Verb (§121).

Senātus Caesarem cōpiis in Italiā praeficiet.

The senate will put Caesar in charge of the troops in Italy.

- **inferō, inferre, intulī, illātus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **in-** to **ferō**. **inferō** is a transitive verb and also takes a Dative with a Compound Verb (§121). It may mean “carry in” or “inflict” (war, injury, disgrace).

Bellum incolis intulimus.

We inflicted war on the inhabitants.

- **praefērō, praeferre, praetulī, praelātus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **prae-** to **ferō**. **praefērō** is a transitive verb and also takes a Dative with a Compound Verb (§121).

Mortemne servitūti praefers?

Do you prefer death to slavery?

- **praesum, praesesse, praefuī, praefutūrus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **prae-** to **sum**. **praesum** is an intransitive verb that takes a Dative with a Compound Verb (§121).

Cōpiis praeerat.

He was in command of the troops.

- **volō, velle, voluī, —** is an irregular verb. For its forms see §119. **volō** may be transitive (want, wish) or may be used absolutely (be willing). While **optō, cupiō**, and **volō** all express desire, **volō** suggests a stronger sense of will or purpose on the part of the subject. **volō** appears in two common idioms: **bene velle**, “to wish well,” and **male velle**, “to wish ill.” Both are followed by a Dative of Reference.
- **mālō, mālle, mālūī, —** is an irregular compound verb formed by the addition of the comparative adverb **magis** to **volō**. For its forms and the constructions that accompany it, see §119.
- **nōlō, nōlle, nōlūī, —** is an irregular compound verb formed by the addition of the adverb **nōn** to **volō**. For its forms see §119. It has meanings that are parallel to **volō** (not want, not wish, be unwilling), and it may mean “refuse.”
- **dignus, -a, -um** is an adjective that takes an Ablative of Respect to indicate that which someone is worthy of. Such an Ablative of Respect is regularly translated with the English preposition “of.” **dignus** may also be used absolutely (deserving, worthwhile).

Hoc opus vestrā cūrā dignum est.

This work is worthy of your (pl.) concern.

Dignum est multa scīre.

To know many things is worthwhile.

- **indignus, -a, -um** is an adjective that takes an Ablative of Respect to indicate that which someone is *un-*worthy of. Such an Ablative of Respect is regularly translated with the English preposition “of.”
- **dubius, -a, -um** regularly appears with an Indirect Question or a Doubting clause (§117).
- The conjunction **cum** was developed from an old accusative form of the relative pronoun **quī, quae, quod**, and the archaic form **quom** is common in Roman writers prior to Cicero. This conjunction is not linguistically related to the preposition that is spelled identically. For its use see §118.
- **modo** is an adverb that was in origin the ablative singular of **modus**, but note that the final **-o** is short. **modo** is often used to strengthen an imperative (only, just). It may be used as a temporal adverb (now, just now) and may appear in place of **sōlum** in the expression **nōn modo . . . sed/vērūm etiam . . .**
- **tum** (adv.) and **tunc** (adv.) are synonymous. **tunc** is formed by the addition of the emphatic suffix **-ce** to **tum**. In early Latin **tunc** was more emphatic than **tum**. By the Augustan period this emphasis was less pronounced. **tum** may be used with **cum** with a variety of emphases. The correlatives **cum . . . tum . . .** may be translated “when . . . then/at the same time . . .,” “both . . . and (especially) . . .,” or “not only . . . but also . . .”

Cum illud faciēbat, tum discēdēbam.

When he was doing that thing, then/at the same time I was departing.

Cōsiliū cum patriae tum sibi inimicū capiēbat.

He was forming a plan hostile both to his country and (especially) to himself.

Dīcere vīsa est cum honestam sententiā, tum vērā.

She seemed to speak not only an honorable opinion, but also a true (one).

dignus	Derivatives dignity; indignant; disdain; dainty	Cognates decent; doctor; dogma
gēns	gentle; gentile	kin; king; gender; genealogy; gene
mōns	mountain; amount	mouth; imminent; menace
oblivīscor	oblivious; oubliette	slime; slip
rogō	interrogate; abrogate	rich; reckless
volō	voluntary; velleity; volition; malevolence	voluptuous; will; wealth; well

CHAPTER XIII

Vocabulary

- ▶ **nihilum, nihili** or ***nīlum, nīlī** *n.* nothing
- ▶ **pretium, pretiī** *n.* price, value
- ▶ **honor, honōris** *m.* honor, respect; (political) office
- ▶ **lūmen, lūminis** *n.* light, radiance; *pl.*, eyes
- ▶ **scelus, sceleris** *n.* wicked deed, crime; villainy
- ▶ **vulnus, vulneris** *n.* wound
- ▶ **aestimō** (1-tr.) estimate, value
- ▶ **ex(s)pectō** (1-tr.) wait (for), await, expect
- ▶ **moror** (1-tr.) hinder, delay, wait
- ▶ **mūtō** (1-tr.) change; take in exchange, give in exchange
- ▶ **emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus** buy
- ▶ **faciō, facere, fēcī, factus** reckon (§129)
gradior, gradī, gressus sum proceed, walk, step
 - ▶ **ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum** go out, come out
- ▶ **incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus** take on, begin
- ▶ **perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus** destroy; lose
- ▶ **vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditus** sell
- ▶ **—, —, coepī, coeptus** (defective verb) began, have begun
- ▶ **fīō, fierī, factus sum** become, happen; be made, be done (§126)
- ▶ **cēterus, -a, -um** rest (of), remaining part (of), (the) other
- ▶ **grātus, -a, -um** charming, pleasing; grateful, pleased
 - ▶ **ingrātus, -a, -um** unpleasant, displeasing; ungrateful, displeased
- ▶ **saevus, -a, -um** cruel, savage
- ▶ **tantus, -a, -um** so much, so great (§125)
- ▶ **quantus, -a, -um** how much, how great; as much, as great (§125)
- ▶ **tālis, tāle** such, of such a sort (§125)
- ▶ **quālis, quāle** what sort of; of which sort, as (§125)
- ▶ **tot** (indeclinable adj.) so many (§125)
- ▶ **quot** (indeclinable adj.) how many; as many (§125)
- ▶ **ad** (prep. + acc.) for (the purpose of) (§123)
- ▶ **antequam** (conj.) before (§124)
- ▶ **causā** (+ *preceding* gen.) for the purpose of, for the sake of (§123)
- ▶ **dōnec** (conj.) while, as long as; until (§124)
- ▶ **dum** (conj.) while, as long as; until; provided that (§124)
- ▶ **dummodo** (conj.) provided that (§124)
- ▶ **grātiā** (+ *preceding* gen.) for the purpose of, for the sake of (§123)
- ▶ **modo** (conj.) provided that (§124)
- ▶ **priusquam** (conj.) before (§124)
- ▶ **quia** (conj.) because (§124)
- ▶ **quod** (conj.) because (§124)
- ▶ **tam** (adv.) so (§125)

Vocabulary Notes

- ***nīlum, nīlī** *n.* is a contracted form of **nihilum, nihīlī** *n.* Both words are commonly used as Genitives of Indefinite Value (§129), Ablatives of Price (§130), and Ablatives of Degree of Difference (§112).
- **pretium, pretiū** *n.* is often used as a Genitive of Indefinite Value (§129) or an Ablative of Price (§130).
- **honor, honōris** *m.* may indicate the general notion of “respect” or “honor” or a more concrete mark of respect given to someone. It commonly refers to a political “office.” The archaic nominative singular form **honōs** remains common throughout the classical period.
- **lūmen, lūminis** *n.* is formed by the addition of the suffix **-men** to a stem of the verb **lūceō, lūcēre, lūxī**, — (shine, emit light). In addition to meaning “light” or “radiance” **lūmen** is often used metaphorically to mean the “light” of life or the “enlightenment” of literature, the arts, etc. It is also used in the plural, particularly in poetry, to mean “eyes,” either because the eye is an opening that admits light or from the idea that glancing at something casts light upon the object.
- **scelus, sceleris** *n.* is used to refer to a specific “wicked deed” or “crime,” or it may refer more generally to the abstract idea of “villainy” or “wickedness.”
- **aestimō, aestimāre, aestimāvī, aestimātus** often appears with either a Genitive of Indefinite Value (§129) or an Ablative of Price (§130).
- **ex(s)pectō, ex(s)pectāre, ex(s)pectāvī, ex(s)pectātus** is a transitive verb that may be used absolutely with the meaning “wait.” It may also be followed by a temporal clause introduced by **dum** or **dōnec** (§124). The **s** placed in parentheses in the vocabulary entry indicates that the word may be spelled either with or without an **s**.
- **moror, morārī, morātus sum** may be used transitively (hinder, delay) or intransitively (delay, wait). It may also be followed by a temporal clause introduced by **dum** or **dōnec** (§124).
- **mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātus** may mean “take in exchange” or “give in exchange” with an Ablative of Price (§130). When it is used absolutely, **mūtō** means “change” in the sense of “undergo a change” or “become different.”

Quis servitūtem libertāte mūtet?
Quis libertātem servitūte mūtet?

Who would take slavery in exchange for freedom?
Who would give freedom in exchange for slavery?

- When the verb **faciō** is used with a Genitive of Indefinite Value (§129), it is best translated as “reckon.”
- **ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ē-** to **gradior**. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF **GRADIOR** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF **ĒGREDIOR**. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **GRADIOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- **incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **in-** to **capiō**. **incipiō** is a transitive verb that most frequently appears with an Object Infinitive. In classical Latin the perfect active and perfect passive forms of **incipiō** are rare. The forms of the defective verb —, —, **coepī, coeptus** are used instead. However, the perfect passive participle **inceptus, -a, -um** is commonly used.
- **perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **per-** to **dō**. **perdō** may mean “destroy” or “cause ruin to” (people, things) or “lose” (people, troops, citizenship, beauty). It may also mean “waste” (resources, opportunities). The perfect passive participle **perditus, -a, -um** is frequently used as an adjective meaning “(morally) lost,” “ruined,” or “depraved.” The adverb **perditē** means “recklessly,” “desperately,” or “ruinously.”
- —, —, **coepī, coeptus** is a defective verb. It has forms in the perfect active and perfect passive systems only. In classical Latin, forms of **coepī** are regularly used instead of the perfect active and passive forms of **incipiō**.
- **grātus, -a, -um** and the compound adjective **ingrātus, -a, -um** (< **in-** + **grātus, -a, -um**) have both active and passive senses. The meanings given for these words in the vocabulary list reflect first their active senses and then their passive ones.
- The preposition **ad** is regularly used with gerunds and gerundives to mean “for (the purpose of)” (§123), but it may also have this sense with nouns or pronouns standing alone, particularly demonstratives.

Dux multa ad hoc fēcerat.

The leader had done many things for this purpose.

- The words **causā** and **grātiā** are Ablatives of Cause used as prepositions that take the *genitive* case. The word in the genitive case *precedes* either **causā** or **grātiā**. These words most commonly appear with gerunds or gerundives (§123), but they may also appear with nouns standing alone, particularly abstract nouns.

- **dummodo** is a conjunction formed by the addition of the adverb **modo** to the conjunction **dum** and may be written as one or two words (**dummodo** or **dum modo**). It may introduce a Proviso clause (§124), and, because of this combination, **modo** alone may also introduce a Proviso clause.

	Derivatives	Cognates
cēterus	etc. (et cetera)	he, him, her, it
gradior	digress, progress, congress	grade; degree
grātus	grace; grateful; gratify; gratis; ingrate; agree; congratulate	
mūtō	mutate; commute; permutation	immune; mistake
pretium	praise; price; precious	interpret
vulnus	vulnerable	Valhalla; Valkyrie

CHAPTER XIV

Vocabulary

- lūna, lūnae** *f.* moon
- **aetās, aetātis** *f.* age; lifetime; time
- **agmen, agminis** *n.* line (of march), column; multitude, throng
- auctōritās, auctōritātis** *f.* authority; influence
- nōmen, nōminis** *n.* name
- ōs, ōris** *n. sing. or pl.*, mouth; face
- sōl, sōlis** *m.* sun
- aliquis, aliquid** (indef. pron.) someone, something; anyone, anything (§132)
- aliquī, aliqua, aliquod** (indef. adj.) some, any (§132)
- quis, quid** (indef. pron.) someone, something; anyone, anything (§132)
- quī, qua, quod** (indef. adj.) some, any (§132)
- quisquam, quicquam** (indef. pron.) anyone, anything (§132)
- quisque, quidque (quicque)** (indef. pron.) each or every man or woman, each or every thing (§132)
- quīque, quaeque, quodque** (indef. adj.) each, every (§132)
- spectō** (1-tr.) look (at), observe
- **accidō, accidere, accidī, —** happen
- **efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus** make; bring about
- metuō, metuere, metuī, —** fear, dread
- **occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsūrus** fall, set; die
- **premō, premere, pressī, pressus** press (hard); overpower; check
- **opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus** press on; overwhelm, oppress
- **orior, orīrī, ortus sum** rise, arise
- absūm, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus** be absent, be distant
- adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus** be present, be near
- **cōnferō, cōferre, contulī, collātus** bring together; compare; direct
- **licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est** it is permitted (§137)
- **oportet, oportēre, oportuit** it is proper, it is right (§137)
- **cūnctus, -a, -um** all
- **reliquus, -a, -um** remaining, rest (of)
- absēns, absentis** absent
- **vetus, veteris** old
- **nesesse** (indecl. adj.) necessary (§137)
- adeō** (adv.) to such an extent, to so great an extent, (so) very
- haud** (adv.) not at all, by no means
- **quodsī** (conj.) but if
- **vel** (conj.) or;
vel . . . vel . . ., either . . . or . . . (adv.) even
- vix** (adv.) scarcely, hardly

Vocabulary Notes

- ▶ **aetās, aetātis** *f.* may mean “age” in the sense of the number of years one has lived or in the sense of the “age” or “period” in which one lives. It may also refer to the “lifetime” of a human being, a particular “time of life” (old age, youth), or “time.”
- ▶ **agmen, agminis** *n.* is a noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-men** to a stem of the verb **agō**, and its most general meaning is “a thing being driven.” **agmen** may be used of any “mass” of things (water, clouds, etc.) or of a “throng” or “body” of people moving or acting together. It may also carry a more specifically military sense, “(battle-)line” or “column” of troops, both on the march and drawn up for battle.
- ▶ **accidō, accidere, accidī**, — is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ad-** to **cadō**, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. **accidō** is often used impersonally and may be accompanied by a Dative of Reference. For its use with Substantive Ut clauses see §135.
- ▶ **efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ex-** to **faciō**. For its use with Substantive Ut clauses see §135.
- ▶ **occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsūrus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ob-** to **cadō**, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. While **occidō** may be used of any person or thing that falls, it is commonly used to mean “fall (into grief),” “be ruined,” “die” (when the subject is a person), or “set” or “sink” (when the subject is a heavenly body). The present active participle of **occidō**—**occidēns, occidentis**, “setting”—may be used as a masculine substantive to refer to the “west” as a direction or as a part of the known world.
- ▶ **premō, premere, pressī, pressus** is used in a wide variety of contexts and may be translated by a number of English equivalents. **premō** may mean “press” in the sense of “exert pressure on” (inanimate objects, parts of the body). It may mean “press (hard)” in the sense of “propel,” “drive,” or “attack” (spears, people). It may also mean “overpower, overwhelm” (enemies, ships) or “overshadow,” “cover” (often used of the sun or moon covered over by clouds or shadows). Finally, it may mean “check,” “suppress,” or “stop” (bodies of water, actions, voices).
- ▶ **opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ob-** to **premō**, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. Its meanings and uses are similar to those of the simple verb **premō**. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF **PREMŌ** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF **OPPRIMŌ**. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **PREMŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- ▶ **orior, orīrī, ortus sum** is a fourth-conjugation, intransitive deponent verb. It may be used of heavenly bodies and mean “rise,” or it may mean more generally “arise” or “come into being.” In the present indicative it is usually conjugated as a *third*-conjugation *i*-stem verb (e.g., **oritur, not orītur**). **orior** has a rare irregular future active participle: **oritūrus, -a, -um** (cf. **moritūrus, -a, -um**). The present active participle of **orior**—**oriēns, orientis**, “rising”—may be used as a masculine substantive to refer to the “east” as a direction or as a part of the known world. COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM **ORIOR** DO NOT EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING.
- ▶ **cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **con-** to **ferō**. The idiom **sē cōnferre** means “to betake oneself,” “to go.”
- ▶ For the third person singular forms that appear in the principal parts of impersonal verbs, such as **licet, licēre, licuit** or **licitum est** and **oportet, oportēre, oportuit**, see §137. Many impersonal verbs have alternate third principal parts formed as impersonal passives (§54).
- ▶ The verb **licet** indicates what is legal or permitted. The verb **oportet** indicates what is proper or necessary in accordance with one’s duty. **necesse est** means “it is necessary” in the sense of “it is compulsory.”
- ▶ **cūnctus, -a, -um** is a synonym of **omnis, omne**, but contains more of an idea of “all (joined) together.” **cūnctus, -a, -um** is more commonly found in the plural.
- ▶ The adjective **reliquus, -a, -um** is related to the verb **relinquō**. It often refers to the remaining portion of things or people left over after certain things or people have been mentioned. It may often be translated “rest of.”

Rēgīna reliquam vītā bene ēgit.

The queen conducted the rest of (her) life well.

- ▶ **vetus, veteris** means “old” as opposed to “young,” and “old” or “experienced” as opposed to “new.” Less commonly, **vetus** is synonymous with **antīquus, -a, -um** and means “old” in the sense of “of an earlier or ancient time.” The ablative singular form is usually **vetere**. **vetus** has *no* *i*-stem features in the plural: its neuter nominative/accusative plural form is **vetera**, its genitive plural form is **veterum**, and its masculine/feminine accusative plural form is **veterēs**. **vetus** has an irregular superlative form: **veterrimus, -a, -um**. MEMORIZE THESE IRREGULAR FORMS.

- The conjunction **quodsī** (sometimes written as two words, **quod sī**) is formed from the Adverbial Accusative of the relative pronoun **quod** (to the extent of which, as to which) and the conjunction **sī**. It nearly always has adversative force and is best translated “but if.”
- The conjunction **vel** is used to mark an indifferent choice and thus should be distinguished from **aut**, which indicates mutually exclusive propositions.

Vel tēlō vel ferrō pugnābō.

I shall fight either with a spear or with a sword.

	Derivatives	Cognates
accidō	accident	
aetās	age; coetaneous	eternal ; aught; ever; aye; longevity; medieval; eon
licet	illicit	
necesse	necessary	
nōmen	nominate; noun; nomenclature	pseudonym; onomatopoeia; patronymic; synonymous
occidō	occident; occasion	
orior	orient; origin; abort	hormone ; are; earnest
ōs	oral; oscillate; ostiary; orifice	
premō	reprimand; pressure; print	
sōl	solar; solarium; parasol; solstice	sun ; south
spectō	aspect; speculum; spectrum	spy; espionage; telescope; episcopal
vetus	veteran; inveterate; veterinary	etesian

CHAPTER XV

Vocabulary

- **caput, capitis** *n.* head
- **nūmen, nūminis** *n.* divine power, divinity, divine spirit, numen
- **orbis, orbis, -ium** *m.* ring, circle
 - **orbis terrārum**, world

- **vultus, vultūs** *m. sing. or pl.*, expression; face

- **circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus** place round; surround
- **for** (1-tr.) speak, say
- **obstō, obstāre, obstitī, obstātūrus** stand in the way; hinder, block (§140)
- **vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus** forbid (§140)

- **dēterreō, dēterrēre, dēterruī, dēterritus** deter, prevent (§140)
- **prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus** prevent; prohibit, forbid (§140)
- **vereor, verērī, veritus sum** be in awe of, respect; dread, fear (§139)

- **cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus** surround; gird (on oneself)
- **cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitūtus** set up, establish; decide
- **rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus** seize, tear away, carry (off)
 - **ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus** tear away, snatch away
- **solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus** loosen; free, release; dissolve

- impediō, impedire, impediī/impedivī, impedītus** hinder, impede (§140)

- interest, interesse, interfuit** it is important, it concerns (§141)
- **miseret, miserēre, miseruit or miseritum est** it moves (one) to pity (§141)
- paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit** it causes (one) to repent or regret (§141)
- piget, pigēre, piguit** it disgusts (one), it irks (one) (§141)
- **pudet, pudēre, puduit or puditum est** it makes (one) ashamed (§141)
- rēfert, rēferre, rētulit** it is important, it concerns (§141)
- **taedet, taedēre, taesum est** it makes (one) tired or sick (§141)

- celer, celeris, celere** swift
- dulcis, dulce** sweet, pleasant
- turpis, turpe** foul, ugly; base, shameful

- nē** (conj.) introduces positive Fear clause, that (§139)
- quīn** (conj.) introduces Prevention clause, from (§140)
- **quod** (conj.) the fact that
- **quōminus** (conj.) introduces Prevention clause, from (§140)
- ut** (conj.) introduces negative Fear clause, that . . . not (§139)

Vocabulary Notes

- In addition to meaning “head,” **caput, capitis** *n.* may mean the “life” of a man, particularly in oaths and when representing the price paid for an offense. **caput** is also used, with affection or contempt, to refer to the entire “person.”
- **nūmen, nūminis** *n.* is a noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-men** to a stem of the verb ***nuō**, ***nuere**, ***nuī**, ***nūtus**, “nod.”¹ **nūmen** may mean the “divine will” that approves of or lies behind events or actions, or it may mean more generally the “divine power,” “divinity,” or “(divine) spirit” that each god possesses.
- **orbis, orbis, -ium** *m.* may indicate many circular shapes (ring, circle, sphere, ball, disk). The idiom **orbis terrarum** (occasionally **orbis terrae**) is so common that sometimes **orbis** unmodified by a genitive form of **terra** may also mean “world.”
- **vultus, vultūs** *m.* may refer to a particular facial “expression” or more generally to a person’s “countenance” or “appearance” (with an emphasis on the appearance of the face). In both the singular and the plural it may indicate a person’s “face.” When **vultus** is used in combination with **ōs**, **vultus** refers to the upper portion of the face, and **ōs** to the lower.
- **circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **circum-** to **dō**. It may appear with an Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb (§146). **circumdō** may also mean “place” something (Accusative, Direct Object) “around” something (Dative with a Compound Verb).
- **for, fārī, fātus sum** is cognate with **fāma**. **for** is far more common in poetry than in prose. It may take an Accusative, Direct Object or introduce a direct quotation. It does not introduce Indirect Statement. **for** is often used of the utterances of gods and occasionally of humans when they are speaking prophetically. COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM **FOR** DO NOT EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **FOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- **obstō, obstāre, obstiti, obstātūrus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ob-** to **stō**. It exhibits regular vowel weakening in the third principal part. **obstō** may take a Dative with a Compound Verb and may introduce a Prevention clause (§140).
- **vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus** is an irregular first-conjugation verb. For constructions with **vetō** see §140.
- **dēterreō, dēterrere, dēterruī, dēterritus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **dē-** to **terreō**. **dēterreō** may introduce a Prevention clause (§140).
- **prohibeō, prohibere, prohibuī, prohibitus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **prō-** to **habeō**. It exhibits regular vowel weakening in all four principal parts. For constructions with **prohibeō** see §140.
- **vereor, verērī, veritus sum** may introduce a Fear clause (§139), and while it may mean “fear” or “dread,” it often means “respect” or “be in awe of” those who are greater in rank or being (gods, parents, kings). It has a broader meaning than **timeō**, a verb that reports fear but not awe or reverence. COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM **VEREOR** DO NOT EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING.
- **cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus** often appears with an Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb (§146). It may also be used to mean “surround” or “encircle” something (Accusative, Direct Object) with something (Ablative of Means). COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM **CINGŌ** DO NOT EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING.
- **cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitūtus** has a broad range of meanings, which include “station” or “draw up” (soldiers, troops); “establish” or “build” (towers, altars); “make” or “create” (the human race, laws, peace); and “fix,” “appoint,” or “agree upon” (a price, a specific day, boundaries). When **cōstituō** means “decide,” it is followed by an Object Infinitive.
- **rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus** describes the violent action of seizing and carrying off things or people. It is also used to mean “(sexually) violate” or “rape.”
- **ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ē-** to **rapiō**. It exhibits regular vowel weakening in all four principal parts. Although **ēripiō** is a synonym of **rapiō**, it is also used to mean “snatch” or “rescue” (from danger, death). THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF **RAPIŌ** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF **ĒRIPIŌ**. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **RAPIŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- The basic meaning of **solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus** is “loosen” or “untie” (bonds, ropes). Its extended meanings include “free,” “release,” or “relax” (persons, souls, limbs). Finally, **solvō** is used to mean “resolve,”

1. While the simple verb ***nuō** does not occur in the Latin that survives, several compounds (e.g., **abnuō**, **adnuō**, **innuō**, and **renuō**) are common.

“acquit,” or “discharge” (problems, debts, vows, legal charges). COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM **SOLVŌ** DO NOT EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **SOLVŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

- **miseret, miserēre, miseruit** or **miseritum est** has two third principal parts, which are equivalent in meaning. Both are rare in the Latin that survives.
- **pudet, pudēre, pudit** or **puditum est** has two third principal parts, which are equivalent in meaning. **puditum est** is rare.
- The third principal part of **taedet, taedēre, taesum est** appears only once in the Latin that survives. Slightly more frequent is the compound form **pertaesum est**.
- When **quod** means “the fact that,” it introduces a noun clause with a verb in the indicative mood. Such a clause may be used with the impersonal verbs **paenitet, piget, and pudet** (§141), but **quod**-the-fact-that clauses also appear frequently with other verbs or in apposition to a variety of nouns or pronouns.

Eius factum fortissimum meminerimus, quod vulnere acceptō vitam cōsulis servāvit.

We shall remember his very brave deed: the fact that, with a wound received, he saved the consul's life.

- **quōminus** is a compound conjunction made up of the relative pronoun **quō** (by which degree) and the comparative adverb **minus** (less). It is often written as two separate words (**quō minus**). The use of **quōminus** to introduce Prevention clauses (§140) reflects their origins as Purpose clauses.

	Derivatives	Cognates
caput	capital; capitulate; captain; chapter; head; chief; decapitate	
cingō	cinch; succinct	
orbis	orb; orbit	
paenitet	penitent	
rapiō	rape; rapt; ravish; raven; rapid	
solvō	dissolve; solute	forlorn; -less; loose; lose; analysis
taedet	tedium	
vereor	revere	wary; aware; steward; guard

LATIN TO ENGLISH VOCABULARY

This Latin to English Vocabulary includes all words from vocabulary lists in *Learn to Read Latin*. Numbers in parentheses refer to the chapter (e.g., 6) or section (e.g., §16) in which the vocabulary word is introduced. Some additional meanings given in vocabulary notes are included.

- ā, ab** (prep. + abl.) (away) from (1); (prep. + abl.) by (3)
A. = Aulus, Aulī m. Aulus (§16)
abeō, abire, abiī, abitum go away (5)
absēns, absentis absent (14)
absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus be absent, be distant (14)
ac or atque (conj.) and (also) (3)
accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum go to, come to, approach (5)
accidō, accidere, accidī, — happen (14)
accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus receive; accept; hear (of), learn (of) (5)
ācer, ācris, ācre sharp, keen; fierce (6)
acerbus, -a, -um bitter; harsh (7)
aciēs, aciēī f. sharp edge; keenness; battle line (9)
ad (prep. + acc.) toward, to (1); (prep. + acc.) for the purpose of (13)
adeō (adv.) to such an extent, to so great an extent, (so) very (14)
adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus be present, be near (14)
Aenēās, Aenēae m. Aeneas; **Aenēān = acc. sing.;** **Aenēā = voc. sing.** (§16)
aequus, -a, -um level, even; equitable, just; calm, tranquil (10)
aestimō (1-tr.) estimate, value (13)
aetās, aetātis f. age; lifetime; time (14)
ager, agrī m. field (1)
agmen, agminis n. line (of march), column; army; multitude, throng (14)
agō, agere, ēgī, āctus drive; do; spend, conduct (4)
causam agere (idiom) to plead a case (4)
grātiās agere (idiom) to give thanks (12)
age, agite, used to strengthen other commands, come on! (4)
agricola, agricolae m. farmer (1)
aliquī, aliqua, aliquod (indef. adj.) some, any (14)
aliquis, aliquid (indef. pron.) someone, something; anyone, anything (14)
aliter (adv.) otherwise, in another way (9)
alius, alia, aliud other, another (9)
alter, altera, alterum the other (of two) (9)
altum, altī n. deep sea; height (4)
altus, -a, -um tall, high; deep (4)
ambulō (1-intr.) walk (2)
amīcitia, amīcitiāe f. friendship (5)
amīcus, -a, -um friendly (+ dat.) (3)
amīcus, amīcī m. friend (3)
amō (1-tr.) love (2)
amor, amōris m. love; *pl.*, feelings of love (6)
Amor, Amōris m. Love, Amor (§63)
an (conj.) *introduces an alternative question, or; introduces an indirect question, whether* (12)
— . . . an . . . whether . . . or . . . (12)
anima, animae f. life force; soul (1)
animal, animālis, -ium n. animal (6)
animus, animī m. (rational) soul, mind; spirit; *pl.*, strong feelings (2)
annus, annī m. year (9)
ante (adv.) before, earlier, previously; (prep. + acc.) before; in front of (7)
antequam (conj.) before (13)
antīquus, -a, -um old, ancient (7)
M. Antōnius, M. Antōnī m. Marcus Antonius, Marc Antony (§16)

- Apollō, Apollinis** *m.* Apollo (§63)
App. = **Appius, Appiī** *m.* Appius (§16)
Appius, Appiī *m.* Appius (§16)
apud (prep. + acc.) at the house of, in the presence of, among (10)
āra, ārae *f.* altar (7)
arbitror (1-tr.) judge, consider, think (11)
arma, armōrum *n. pl.* arms, weapons (2)
ars, artis, -ium *f.* skill, art; guile; trick (7)
Athēnae, Athēnārum *f. pl.* Athens (6)
atque or **ac** (conj.) and (also) (3)
auctōritās, auctōritātis *f.* authority; influence (14)
audācia, audāciae *f.* boldness; recklessness, audacity (11)
audacter or **audāciter** (adv.) boldly; recklessly (8)
audāx, audācis daring, bold; reckless (8)
audeō, audēre, ausus sum dare (8)
audiō, audire, audīvī, audītus hear, listen (to) (4)
auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus carry away, take away, remove (7)
Augustus, Augustī *m.* Augustus (§63)
Aulus, Aulī *m.* Aulus (§16)
aurum, aurī *n.* gold (1)
aut (conj.) or; **aut . . . aut . . .** either . . . or . . . (7)
autem (postpositive conj.) however; moreover (6)
auxilia, auxiliōrum *n. pl.* auxiliary troops (4)
auxilium, auxiliī *n.* aid, help (4)
- Bacchus, Bacchī** *m.* Bacchus (§63)
bellum, bellī *n.* war (1)
bellum gerere (idiom) to wage war (4)
bene (adv.) well (5)
bene velle (idiom) to wish well (12)
bonus, -a, -um good (3)
brevis, breve short, brief (11)
- C.** = **Gaius, Gaiī** *m.* Gaius (§16)
cadō, cadere, cecidī, casūrus fall; die (10)
caecus, -a, -um blind; hidden, secret, dark (8)
caelum, caelī *n.* sky, heaven (4)
Caesar, Caesaris *m.* Caesar (§63)
campus, campī *m.* (flat) plain (11)
canō, canere, cecinī, cantus sing (of) (4)
capio, capere, cepī, captus take (up), capture; win (4)
cōnsilium capere (idiom) to form a plan (4)
caput, capitis *n.* head (15)
careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus lack, be without, be free (from) (+ abl.) (6)
carmen, carminis *n.* song, poem (6)
Carthāgō, Carthāginis *f.* Carthage (6)
cārus, -a, -um precious; dear (to) (+ dat.) (7)
castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (military) camp (11)
castra movēre (idiom) to break camp (11)
castra pōnere (idiom) to pitch or make camp (11)
- cāsus, cāsūs** *m.* fall; occurrence, chance, misfortune (10)
Catīlina, Catīlinae *m.* Catiline (§16)
Catō, Catōnis *m.* Cato (§63)
Catullus, Catullī *m.* Catullus (§16)
causā (+ preceding gen.) for the purpose of, for the sake of (13)
causa, causae *f.* reason, cause; case (4)
causam agere (idiom) to plead a case (4)
cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum go, move; yield; withdraw (5)
celer, celeris, celere swift (15)
centēsīmus, -a, -um hundredth (§93)
centum (indeclinable adj.) hundred (§93)
Cerēs, Cereris *f.* Ceres (§63)
certē (adv.) surely, certainly; at least (7)
certus, -a, -um sure, certain, reliable (7)
cēterus, -a, -um rest (of), remaining part (of), (the) other (13)
Cicerō, Cicerōnis *m.* Cicero (§63)
cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus surround; gird (on oneself) (15)
circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus place round; surround (15)
cīvis, cīvis, -ium *m. or f.* citizen (6)
cīvitās, cīvitātis *f.* state, citizenry; citizenship (7)
clārus, -a, -um bright, clear; famous (4)
Cn. = **Gnaeus, Gnaei** *m.* Gnaeus (§16)
—, —, coepī, coeptus (defective verb) began, have begun (13)
cōgitō (1-tr.) think; ponder (2)
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus come to know, learn, recognize; *perfect*, know (10)
cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus bring together; compare; direct (14)
sē cōnferre (idiom) to betake oneself, to go (14)
cōnfiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus accomplish, complete; wear out; kill (12)
cōnor (1-tr.) try, attempt (8)
cōnsilium, cōnsiliī *n.* deliberation; plan, advice; judgment (1)
cōnsilium capere (idiom) to form a plan (4)
cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitutus set up, establish; decide (15)
cōsul, cōsulis *m.* consul (8)
cōsulātus, cōsulātus *m.* consulship (9)
contrā (adv.) on the contrary; in opposition, in turn; (prep. + acc.) against, contrary to; facing (10)
cōpia, cōpiae *f.* wealth, abundance; *pl.*, troops, forces (7)
Corinna, Corinnae *f.* Corinna (§63)
L. Cornēlius Sulla, L. Cornēlii Sullae *m.* Lucius Cornelius Sulla (§16)
corpus, corporis *n.* body (6)

- crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus** trust, believe (+ dat.) (11)
cum (prep. + abl.) with (1); (conj.) when; since; although (12)
cūnctus, -a, -um all (14)
Cupīdō, Cupīdinis *m.* Cupid, Amor (§63)
cupīdus, -a, -um desirous (+ gen.) (4)
cupiō, cupere, cupiī/cupivī, cupītus desire, long for, want (7)
cūr (interrog. adv.) why (2)
cūra, cūrae *f.* care, concern; anxiety (2)
Cynthia, Cynthiae *f.* Cynthia (§63)
- D. = Decimus, Decimī** *m.* Decimus (§16)
dē (prep. + abl.) (down) from; about, concerning (1)
dea, deae *f.* goddess (1)
dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus owe; ought (2)
decem (indeclinable adj.) ten (4)
decimus, -a, -um tenth (§93)
Decimus, Decimī *m.* Decimus (§16)
dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvī, dēlētus destroy (10)
dēterreō, dēterrere, dēterruī, dēterritus deter, prevent (15)
deus, deī *m.* god (1)
Diāna, Diānae *f.* Diana (§63)
dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus say, speak, tell (4)
dictum, dictī *n.* word; saying (6)
diēs, diē *m. or f.* day (9)
differō, differre, distulī, dilātus *intr.*, differ, be different; *tr.*, carry in different directions (7)
difficilis, difficile difficult (6)
difficiliter or **difficulter** (adv.) with difficulty (6)
dignus, -a, -um worthy (of) (+ abl.) (12)
diligentia, diligentiae *f.* diligence (3)
Dīs, Dītis *m.* Dis, Pluto, Hades (§63)
discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum go away, depart (5)
dissimilis, dissimile dissimilar, unlike, different (+ gen. or dat.) (11)
diū (adv.) for a long time (11)
diūtius (adv.) longer (11)
diūtissimē (adv.) longest (11)
divīnus, -a, -um belonging to the gods, divine (§63)
divus, -a, -um deified, divine (§63)
dō, dare, dedī, datus give, grant (2)
poenās dare (idiom) to pay the penalty (2)
vēla dare (idiom) to set sail (2)
dominus, dominī *m.* master, lord (1)
domus, domī *f.* house, home (6)
domus, domūs *f.* house, home (9)
dōnec (conj.) while, as long as; until (13)
dōnō (1-tr.) give; present, reward (2)
dōnum, dōnī *n.* gift (1)
- dubitō** (1-tr.) hesitate; doubt (12)
dubium, dubiī *n.* doubt, hesitation (12)
dubius, -a, -um doubtful (12)
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus lead; consider (4)
dulcis, dulce sweet, pleasant (15)
dum (conj.) while, as long as; until; provided that (13)
dummodo (conj.) provided that (13)
duo, duae, duo two (§93)
dūrus, -a, -um hard; harsh (5)
dux, ducis *m. or f.* leader (10)
- ē, ex** (prep. + abl.) (out) from (1)
ecce (interj.) lo! behold! look! (§74)
efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus make; bring about (14)
ego, meī (personal pron.) I; me (4)
—, meī (reflexive pron.) myself (5)
ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum go out, come out (13)
ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus throw out, expel
sē ēicere (idiom) to rush forth (11)
emō, emere, emī, emptus buy (13)
enim (postpositive conj.) in fact, indeed; for (2)
eō (adv.) to that place, thither (§131)
eō, ire, iī/ivī, itum go (3)
eōdem (adv.) to the same place (§131)
equidem (adv.) indeed, certainly; for my part (4)
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus tear away, snatch away (15)
errō (1-intr.) wander; err, make a mistake (2)
et (conj.) and; **et . . . et . . .** both . . . and . . . ; (adv.) even, also (1)
etenim (conj.) and indeed; for in fact (2)
etiam (adv.) also, even; still (7)
etsī (conj.) although (5)
exercitus, exercitūs *m.* army (9)
experior, experiri, expertus sum test; try; experience (8)
ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliū *n.* exile, banishment (8)
ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) wait for, await, expect (13)
- facile** (adv.) easily; readily (6)
facilis, facile easy (6)
faciō, facere, fēcī, factus make; do (4); reckon (13)
factum, factī *n.* deed (1)
falsus, -a, -um deceptive, false (7)
fāma, fāmae *f.* report, rumor; reputation, fame (1)
fās (indeclinable noun) *n.* (what is divinely) right; (what is) permitted (12)
fateor, fatērī, fassus sum confess, admit (8)
fātum, fātī *n.* destiny, fate (5)
fēlix, fēlicis lucky, fortunate, happy (6)
fēmina, fēminae *f.* woman; wife (1)

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring, bear, carry; endure;
say, report (5)

lēgem ferre (idiom) to pass a law (8)

sē ferre (idiom) to proceed (quickly) (5)

ferrum, ferrī *n.* iron; sword (1)

fidēs, fideī *f.* faith, trust; trustworthiness; loyalty (9)

filia, filiae *f.* daughter (1)

filius, filiū *m.* son (1)

finis, finis, -ium *m. or f.* end, limit, boundary;
pl., territory (10)

fīō, fierī, factus sum become, happen; be made, be
done (13)

for (1-tr.) speak, say (15)

fore = futūrus, -a, -um esse (11)

fors, fortis, -ium *f.* chance, luck (12)

fortis, forte brave; strong (6)

fortūna, fortūnae *f.* fortune, chance (7)

forum, forī *n.* public square, marketplace, forum (3)

frāter, frātris *m.* brother (7)

fuga, fugae *f.* flight (8)

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus flee (7)

Gaius, Gaiī *m.* Gaius (§16)

gaudium, gaudiū *n.* joy (8)

gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* nation, people; clan, family (12)

genus, generis *n.* descent, origin; race, stock; kind,
sort (10)

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus bear; manage, conduct;
perform (4)

bellum gerere (idiom) to wage war (4)

gladius, gladiū *m.* sword (1)

glōria, glōriae *f.* renown, glory (4)

Gnaeus, Gnaei *m.* Gnaeus (§16)

Gracchus, Gracchī *m.* Gracchus (either of the
Gracchi brothers) (§16)

gradior, gradī, gressus sum walk, step, proceed (13)

Graecia, Graeciae *f.* Greece (§16)

grātia, grātia *f.* favor, kindness; gratitude, thanks (12)

grātiās agere (idiom) to give thanks (12)

grātiām or grātiās habēre (idiom) to have gratitude
(12)

grātiā (+ *preceding* gen.) for the purpose of, for the
sake of (13)

grātus, -a, -um charming, pleasing; grateful, pleased
(13)

gravis, grave heavy, deep; important, serious; severe (8)

habēō, habēre, habuī, habitus have, hold; consider (2)

grātiām or grātiās habēre (idiom) to have gratitude
(12)

ōrātiōnem habēre (idiom) to make a speech (10)

Hannibal, Hannibalis *m.* Hannibal (§63)

haud (adv.) not at all, by no means (14)

herc(u)le (interj.) by Hercules! (§74)

heu (interj.) alas! oh! (§74)

hīc (adv.) here, in this place; at this time (§131)

hic, haec, hoc (demonstr. adj./pron.) this; these (8)

hinc (adv.) from here, hence; henceforth; **hinc . . .**

hinc . . . on this side . . . on that side . . . ;

hinc . . . illinc . . . on this side . . . on that
side . . . (§131)

homō, hominis *m.* human being, man (6)

honestus, -a, -um honorable, respectable (10)

honor or honōs, honōris *m.* honor, respect; (political)
office (13)

Q. Horātius Flaccus, Q. Horātiū Flaccī *m.* Quintus
Horatius Flaccus, Horace (§16)

hortor (1-tr.) urge, encourage, exhort (9)

hostis, hostis, -ium *m.* (public) enemy (6)

hūc (adv.) to here, hither (§131)

humilis, humile humble (11)

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus throw; utter; lay, establish
(11)

iam (adv.) (by) now; (by) then, already; presently (9)

ibi (adv.) in that place, there; then, thereupon (§131)

īdem, eadem, idem same (8)

igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore (11)

ignis, ignis, -ium *m.* fire (11)

Īlium, Īliū *n.* Ilium, Troy (§16)

ille, illa, illud (demonstr. adj./pron.) that; those (8)

illīc (adv.) there, in that place (§131)

illinc (adv.) from there, thence; **hinc . . . illinc . . .** on
this side . . . on that side . . . (§131)

illūc (adv.) to there, thither (§131)

immortālis, immortalē immortal (7)

impediō, impedire, impedī/impedīvī, impeditus
hinder, impede (15)

imperātor, imperātōris *m.* commander, general (11)

imperium, imperī *n.* power, authority, command;
empire (3)

imperō (1-intr.) give an order, order, command
(+ dat.) (9)

impius, -a, -um disloyal, wicked (5)

in (prep. + acc.) into, onto; against; (prep. + abl.) in,
on (1)

incertus, -a, -um unsure, uncertain, unreliable (7)

incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus take on, begin (13)

incola, incolae *m.* inhabitant (3)

inde (adv.) from that place, from there, thence;
from that time, thereupon (§131)

indignus, -a, -um unworthy (of) (+ abl.) (12)

īnfēlix, infēlicis unlucky, unfortunate, unhappy (6)

īnferō, inferre, intulī, illātus carry (into); inflict (on)
(12)

ingenium, ingenī *n.* nature; disposition; (natural)
talent (7)

ingēns, ingentis huge, vast; remarkable (6)

- ingrātus, -a, -um** unpleasant, displeasing; ungrateful, displeased (13)
- inimicitia, inimicitiae** *f.* enmity, hostility;
pl., unfriendly relations, enmity (5)
- inimicus, -a, -um** unfriendly, hostile (+ *dat.*) (3)
- inimicus, inimicī** *m.* (personal) enemy (3)
- inīquus, -a, -um** uneven; inequitable, unjust (10)
- inquam** (defective verb) say (8)
- īnsidiae, īnsidiarum** *f. pl.* ambush, plot, treachery (7)
- īnsula, īnsulae** *f.* island (1)
- intelligō, intelligere, intellēxi, intellēctus** understand (6)
- inter** (*prep.* + *acc.*) between, among; during (6)
- interest, interesse, interfuit** it is important, it concerns (15)
- interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus** kill (5)
- inveniō, invenire, invēni, inventus** find, discover (11)
- invidia, invidiae** *f.* envy, jealousy; ill-will, resentment (4)
- ipse, ipsa, ipsum** (intensive *adj.*) -self, -selves; very (5)
- īra, īrae** *f.* anger, wrath (2)
- is, ea, id** (*demonstr. adj.*) this, that; these, those; (*personal pron.*) he, she, it; they; him, her, it; them (4)
- iste, ista, istud** (*demonstr. adj./pron.*) that (of yours); those (of yours) (8)
- ita** (*adv.*) so, thus, in this way, in such a way (7)
- Italia, Italiae** *f.* Italy (1)
- iubeō, iubere, iussī, iussus** order (2)
- Iūlia, Iūliae** *f.* Julia (§16)
- C. Iūlius Caesar, C. Iūlii Caesaris** *m.* Gaius Julius Caesar (§63)
- Iūnō, Iūnōnis** *f.* Juno (§63)
- Iuppiter, Iovis** *m.* Jupiter (§63)
- iūre** (*adv.*) rightly, justly (6)
- iūs, iūris** *n.* right, law; judgment; court (6)
- iussum, iussī** *n.* order, command; *abl. sing.*, **iussū** (9)
- L. = Lūcius, Lūciī** *m.* Lucius (§16)
- labor, labōris** *m.* work; effort, hardship (10)
- labōrō** (1-*intr.*) work; suffer, be distressed (2)
- laetus, -a, -um** happy; fertile (3)
- laudō** (1-*tr.*) praise (3)
- lēgātus, lēgātī** *m.* legate, envoy; lieutenant (10)
- legiō, legiōnis** *f.* legion (11)
- legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus** choose; read (6)
- Lesbia, Lesbiae** *f.* Lesbia (§63)
- levis, leve** light; trivial; fickle (8)
- lēx, lēgis** *f.* law (8)
- lēgem ferre** (*idiom*) to pass a law (8)
- liber, librī** *m.* book (1)
- liber, libera, liberum** free (3)
- Liber, Liberī** *m.* Liber, Bacchus (§63)
- liberō** (1-*tr.*) free (6)
- libertās, libertātis** *f.* freedom (8)
- licet, licere, licuit or licitum est** it is permitted (14)
- littera, litterae** *f.* letter (of the alphabet); *pl.*, letter, epistle; literature (12)
- Līvia, Līviae** *f.* Livia (§16)
- locus, locī** *m.* place; **loca, locōrum** *n. pl.* places (8)
- longē** (*adv.*) a long way, far; by far (11)
- longus, -a, -um** long; far; long-standing; far-reaching (11)
- loquor, loquī, locūtus sum** speak, talk (11)
- Lūcius, Lūciī** *m.* Lucius (§16)
- lūmen, lūminis** *n.* light, radiance; *pl.*, eyes (13)
- lūna, lūnae** *f.* moon (14)
- lūx, lūcis** *f.* light, daylight (11)
- prīmā lūce** (*idiom*) at dawn (11)
- M. = Marcus, Marcī** *m.* Marcus (§16)
- M' = Manius, Maniī** *m.* Manius (§16)
- magis** (*adv.*) more (greatly) (11)
- magnopere** (*adv.*) greatly (10)
- magnus, -a, -um** large, big; great (3)
- magnam partem** (*adverbial acc.*), for a great part (13)
- maior, maius** (*adj.*) greater (11)
- maiōrēs, maiōrum** *m. pl.* ancestors (11)
- male** (*adv.*) badly (5)
- male velle** (*idiom*) to wish ill (12)
- mālō, mālle, mālūi, —** want more, prefer (12)
- malus, -a, -um** bad, evil (3)
- maneō, manere, mānsī, mānsūrus** remain, stay; *tr.*, await (7)
- Manius, Maniī** *m.* Manius (§16)
- manus, manūs** *f.* hand; band, troop (9)
- Marcus, Marcī** *m.* Marcus (§16)
- mare, maris, *-ium** *n.* sea (6)
- Mars, Martis** *m.* Mars (§63)
- māter, mātris** *f.* mother (6)
- maximē** (*adv.*) most greatly; especially (11)
- maximus, -a, -um** greatest (11)
- maximam partem** (*adverbial acc.*) for the greatest part, for the most part (13)
- medius, -a, -um** middle (of); *neut. subst.*, midst; the open (10)
- mehercule or meherculēs** (*interj.*) by Hercules! (§74)
- , meī** (*reflexive pron.*) myself (5)
- melior, melius** (*adj.*) better (11)
- melius** (*adv.*) better (11)
- meminī, meminisse** (defective verb) remember (5)
- memoria, memoriae** *f.* memory (12)
- mēns, mentis, -ium** *f.* mind; intention, purpose; attitude (6)
- Mercurius, Mercuriī** *m.* Mercury (§63)
- metuō, metuere, metuī, —** fear, dread (14)
- metus, metūs** *m.* fear, dread (10)

- meus, -a, -um** my, mine (4); my (own) (5)
mī, masc. sing. voc. of meus, -a, -um (4)
mīles, mīlitis *m.* soldier (6)
mille; mīlia, mīlium thousand (§93)
mīllēsīmus, -a, -um thousandth (§93)
Mīnerva, Mīnervae *f.* Minerva (§63)
minimē (adv.) least; not at all (11)
minimus, -a, -um smallest (11)
minor, minus (adj.) smaller (11)
minus (adv.) less (11)
miser, misera, miserum wretched, pitiable, miserable (3)
miseret, miserēre, miseruit or **miseritum est** it moves (one) to pity (15)
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus send (4)
modo (adv.) only, just; now, just now (12); (conj.) provided that (13)
modus, modī *m.* measure; limit; rhythm, meter; manner, way (8)
quemadmodum (rel. or interrog. adv.) in the manner in which, as; how (8)
quō modō (interrog. adv.) in what way, how (8)
moenia, moenium *n. pl.* (city) walls (6)
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus warn; remind; advise (9)
mōns, montis, -ium *m.* mountain (12)
mōnstrō (1-tr.) show, point out (2)
mora, morae *f.* delay (3)
morior, morī, mortuus sum die (8)
moror (1-tr.) hinder, delay, wait (13)
mors, mortis, -ium *f.* death (7)
mortālis, mortāle mortal (7)
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, practice; *pl.* (sometimes), character (10)
mōtus, mōtūs *m.* motion, movement; disturbance (9)
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus set in motion, stir (up), move (2)
mox (adv.) soon; then (3)
multum (adv.) much, a lot (5)
multus, -a, -um much, many (3)
mūnus, mūneris *n.* service, duty; gift (7)
mūrus, mūrī *m.* wall (11)
mūtō (1-tr.) change; take in exchange, give in exchange (13)
nam (conj.) for (2)
namque (conj.) for in fact (2)
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum be born (10)
nātūra, nātūrae *f.* nature (7)
nātus, nātī *m.* son (10)
nauta, nautae *m.* sailor (1)
-ne (interrog. enclitic particle) *added to the first word of a question* (2)
-ne . . . an . . . whether . . . or . . . (12)
nē (adv.) not (7); (conj.) *introduces negative Purpose clause, in order that . . . not* (9); *introduces negative Indirect Command, that . . . not* (9); (conj.) *introduces positive Fear clause, that* (15)
nē . . . quidem not . . . even (4)
nec or **neque** (conj.-adv.) and not; **neque/nec . . . neque/nec . . .** neither . . . nor . . . (2)
nesse (indeclinable adj.) necessary (14)
necne (conj.) *in Indirect Question, or not* (12)
nefās (indeclinable noun) *n.* (what is divinely) forbidden, sacrilege (12)
nēmō, nēminis *m. or f.* no one (9)
Neptūnus, Neptūnī *m.* Neptune (§63)
neque or **nec** (conj.-adv.) and not; **neque/nec . . . neque/nec . . .** neither . . . nor . . . (2)
Nerō Claudius Caesar, Nerōnis Claudī Caesaris *m.* Nero Claudius Caesar, Nero (§63)
nesciō, nescīre, nescī/nescīvī, nescītus not know (11)
neuter, neutra, neutrum neither (of two) (9)
nihil or **nīl** (indeclinable noun) *n.* nothing (3)
nihil (adverbial acc.) not at all (13)
nihilum, nihīlī or **nīlum, nīlī** *n.* nothing (13)
nisi (conj.) if . . . not, unless (5)
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — be unwilling, not want, not wish (12)
nōlī, nōlīte (+ inf.) do not (12)
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name (14)
nōn (adv.) not (2)
nōn solum . . . sed/vērum etiam . . . not only . . . but also . . . (7)
nōnne (interrog. particle) *introduces a direct question expecting the answer “yes”* (12)
nōnus, -a, -um ninth (§93)
nōs, nostrum/nostrī (personal pron.) we; us (4)
nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus come to know, learn, recognize; *perfect*, know (10)
noster, nostra, nostrum our, ours (4); our (own) (5)
—, nostrum/nostrī (reflexive pron.) ourselves (5)
nōtus, -a, -um known, well-known; familiar (10)
novem (indeclinable adj.) nine (§93)
novus, -a, -um new; strange (7)
nox, noctis, -ium *f.* night (9)
nūllus, -a, -um not any, no (9)
num (interrogative particle) *introduces a direct question expecting the answer “no”; introduces an Indirect Question, whether* (12)
nūmen, nūminis *n.* divine power, divinity, divine spirit, numen (15)
numquam (adv.) never (6)
nunc (adv.) now (3)
ō (interj.) O (1)
ob (prep. + acc.) on account of, because of (9)
oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum forget (+ gen.) (12)

- obstō, obstāre, obstiti, obstātūrus** stand in the way; hinder, block (15)
- occidēns, occidentis** *m.* west (14)
- occidō, occidere, occidi, occāsūrus** fall, set; die (14)
- octāvus, -a, -um** eighth (§93)
- octō** (indeclinable adj.) eight (§93)
- oculus, oculi** *m.* eye (8)
- ōdi, ōdisse** (defective verb) hate (5)
- odium, odii** *n.* hatred (3)
- omnīnō** (adv.) entirely; *in negative or virtual negative statements or questions*, at all (6)
- omnis, omne** every; all (6)
- oportet, oportēre, oportuit** it is proper, it is right (14)
- oppidum, oppidi** *n.* town (1)
- opprimō, opprimere, oppressi, oppressus** press on; overwhelm, oppress (14)
- oppugnō** (1-tr.) attack (10)
- optimē** (adv.) best (11)
- optimus, -a, -um** best (11)
- optō** (1-tr.) desire (2)
- opus, operis** *n.* work (10)
- opus est** there is need of (+ abl. or nom.) (10)
- ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis** *f.* oration, speech (10)
- ōrātiōnem habēre** (idiom) to make a speech (10)
- ōrātor, ōrātōris** *m.* speaker, orator (10)
- orbis, orbis, -ium** *m.* ring, circle (15)
- orbis terrārum** world (15)
- Orcus, Orci** *m.* Orcus (§63)
- oriēns, orientis** *m.* east (14)
- orior, oriri, ortus sum** rise, arise (14)
- ōrō** (1-tr.) beg (for) (12)
- ōs, ōris** *n. sing. or pl.* mouth; face (14)
- P. Ovidius Nāsō, P. Ovidii Nāsōnis** *m.* Publius Ovidius Naso, Ovid (§63)
- P. = Publius, Publii** *m.* Publius (§16)
- paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit** it causes (one) to repent or regret (15)
- pāreō, pārēre, pārui, pārītūrus** be obedient, obey (+ dat.) (8)
- parō** (1-tr.) prepare (for); get, obtain (9)
- pars, partis, -ium** *f.* part; *sing. or pl.*, (political) faction (7)
- parum** (indeclinable subst.) too little, not enough; (adv.) too little, inadequately (11)
- parvus, -a, -um** small, little (3)
- pater, patris** *m.* father (6)
- pator, patī, passus sum** experience, suffer, endure; permit, allow (8)
- patrēs cōscripti** *voc. pl.* enrolled fathers, senators (6)
- patria, patriae** *f.* country, homeland (1)
- pauci, paucae, pauca** few (4)
- paulum, *pauli** *n.* small amount, a little (11)
- pāx, pācis** *f.* peace; favor (8)
- pectus, pectoris** *n. sing. or pl.*, chest, breast; heart (10)
- pecūnia, pecūniae** *f.* money (1)
- peior, peius** (comparative adj.) worse (11)
- peius** (comparative adv.) worse (11)
- pellō, pellere, pepuli, pulsus** push, drive (off) (9)
- per** (prep. + acc.) through; by (4)
- perditē** (adv.) recklessly, desperately, ruinously (13)
- perditus, -a, -um** (morally) lost, ruined, depraved (13)
- perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus** destroy; lose (13)
- pereō, perire, perii, peritūrus** pass away, be destroyed; perish, die (11)
- perferō, perferre, pertuli, perlātus** suffer, endure; report (10)
- perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus** complete, accomplish (5)
- periculum, periculi** *n.* danger (1)
- pessimē** (adv.) worst (11)
- pessimus, -a, -um** worst (11)
- petō, petere, petii/petivi, petitus** ask (for), seek; attack (7)
- piget, pigēre, piguit** it disgusts (one), it irks (one) (15)
- pius, -a, -um** dutiful, loyal (5)
- placeō, placēre, placui, placitum** be pleasing, please (+ dat.) (8)
- plūrimē** (adv.) most (11)
- plūrimus, -a, -um** most (11)
- plūrimum** (adverbial acc.) very much (13)
- plūs** (adv.) more (11)
- plūs; plūrēs, plūra** (adj.) more (11)
- poena, poenae** *f.* punishment, penalty (2)
- poenās dare** (idiom) to pay the penalty (2)
- poēta, poētae** *m.* poet (1)
- Cn. Pompeius Magnus, Cn. Pompeii Magni** *m.* Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, Pompey the Great (§16)
- pōnō, pōnere, posui, positus** put, place; set aside (4)
- populus, populi** *m.* (the) people; populace (3)
- M. Porcius Catō, M. Porcii Catōnis** *m.* Marcus Porcius Cato, Cato the Elder or Cato the Censor (§63)
- possum, posse, potui, —** be able, can (2)
- post** (adv.) after(ward), later; behind; (prep. + acc.) after; behind (7)
- postquam** (conj.) after (5)
- praefērō, praeferre, praetuli, praelātus** prefer (to) (12)
- praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus** put in charge (of) (12)
- praesum, praesesse, praefui, praefutūrus** be in charge (of) (12)
- praeter** (prep. + acc.) beyond; except (12)
- premō, premere, pressi, pressus** press (hard); overpower; check (14)
- pretium, pretii** *n.* price, value (13)

- primum** (adv.) first; for the first time (11)
quam primum as soon as possible (11)
primus, -a, -um first (§93)
primā luce (idiom) at dawn (11)
prior, prius (adj.) earlier (11)
prius (adv.) before, sooner (11)
priusquam (conj.) before (13)
prō (prep. + abl.) in front of; on behalf of, for; in return for, instead of (3)
proelium, proeliū n. battle (5)
proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus sum set out, set forth (10)
prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus prevent; prohibit, forbid (15)
Sex. Propertius, Sex. Propertiū m. Sextus Propertius (§63)
propter (prep. + acc.) on account of, because of (3)
prōvincia, prōvinciae f. province (3)
pūblicus, -a, -um public (9)
Publius, Publiū m. Publius (§16)
pudet, pudēre, puduit or puditum est it makes (one) ashamed (15)
puella, puellae f. girl (1)
puer, puerī m. boy (1)
pugnō (1-intr.) fight (3)
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum beautiful, handsome (3)
putō (1-tr.) think, suppose (11)
- Q. = Quintus, Quintī m.** Quintus (§16)
quaerō, quaerere, quaesīi/quaesīvī, quaesītus search for, seek, ask (9)
quālis, quāle what sort of; of which sort, as (13)
quam (adv.) as, how; (conj.) than (11)
quam ob rem (adv.) on account of which thing, why; therefore (9)
quam primum as soon as possible (11)
quamquam (conj.) although (5)
quantus, -a, -um how much, how great; as much, as great (13)
quantum (adverbial acc.) how much, as much (13)
quārē (adv.) because of which thing, why; therefore (9)
quartus, -a, -um fourth (§93)
quattuor (indeclinable adj.) four (§93)
-que (enclitic conj.) and (1)
quemadmodum (rel. or interrog. adv.) in the manner in which, as; how (8)
quī, qua, quod (indef. adj.) some, any (14)
quī, quae, quod (interrog. adj.) what, which (8)
quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.) who, which, that (8)
quia (conj.) because (13)
quid (adverbial acc.) to what extent, why (13)
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (indef. pron.) (a) certain person, (a) certain thing (10)
- quīdam, quaedam, quoddam** (indef. adj.) (a) certain (10)
quidem (postpositive adv.) indeed, certainly; at least (4)
nē . . . quidem not even (4)
quīn (rel. adv.) *introduces Relative Clause of Characteristic, who/that . . . not* (10); (conj.) *introduces Doubting clause, that* (12); (conj.) *introduces Prevention clause, from* (15)
quīnque (indeclinable adj.) five (§93)
quintus, -a, -um fifth (§93)
Quintus, Quintī m. Quintus (§16)
quīque, quaeque, quodque (indef. adj.) each, every (14)
quis, quid (interrog. pron.) who, what (8); (indef. pron.) someone, something; anyone, anything (14)
quid (adverbial acc.), to what extent, why (13)
quisquam, quicquam (indef. pron.) someone, something; anyone, anything (14)
quisque, quidque (quicque) (indef. pron.) each/every man/woman, each/every thing (14)
quō (rel. adv.) to where, whither (9); (interrog. adv.) to where, whither (12)
quod (conj.) because (13); (conj.) the fact that (15)
quodsī (conj.) but if (14)
quōminus (conj.) *introduces Prevention clause, from* (15)
quō modō (interrog. adv.) in what way, how (8)
quoniam (conj.) since, because (5)
quoque (adv.) also, too (8)
quot (indeclinable adj.) how many; as many (13)
- rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus** seize, tear away, carry (off) (15)
redeō, redire, rediī, reditum go back, return (5)
referō, referre, rettulī, relātus bring back; report (10)
rēfert, rēferre, rētulit it is important, it concerns (15)
rēgīna, rēgīnae f. queen (1)
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus rule, control (4)
relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus leave (behind), abandon (8)
reliquus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of) (14)
Remus, Remī m. Remus (§16)
rēs, rei f. thing; property; matter, affair; activity; situation (9)
rēs gestae, rērum gestārum f. pl. accomplishments; history (9)
rēs novae, rērum novārum f. pl. revolution (9)
rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae f. republic (9)
respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsus answer, respond (2)

- rēx, rēgis** *m.* king (6)
rogō (1-tr.) ask (for) (12)
Rōma, Rōmae *f.* Rome (6)
Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Romans (3)
Rōmānus, -a, -um Roman (3)
Rōmulus, Rōmulī *m.* Romulus (§16)
rūmor, rūmōris *m.* rumor (12)
rūs, rūris *n. sing. or pl.,* country(side) (6)
- saepe** (adv.) often (8)
saepius (adv.) more often (11)
saepissimē (adv.) most often (11)
saevus, -a, -um cruel, savage (13)
salūs, salūtis *f.* safety; health (§74)
salūtem dīcere to say “greetings,” to say hello (§74)
salvē/salvēte hello! good day! (§74)
sapiēns, sapientis wise (11)
sapientia, sapientiae *f.* wisdom (2)
satis or **sat** (indeclinable subst.) enough;
 (adv.) enough, sufficiently (10)
scelus, sceleris *n.* wicked deed, crime; villainy (13)
sciō, scīre, scīi/scīvī, scītus know (11)
scribō, scribere, scrīpsī, scrīptus write (4)
secundus, -a, -um second (§93)
sed (conj.) but (2)
semper (adv.) always (3)
- C. Semprōnius Gracchus, C. Semprōnii Gracchī** *m.*
 Gaius Sempronius Gracchus (§16)
Ti. Semprōnius Gracchus, Ti. Semprōnii Gracchī *m.*
 Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus (§16)
- senātus, senātūs** *m.* senate (9)
sēnsus, sēnsūs *m.* perception, feeling; sense (11)
sententia, sententiae *f.* thought, feeling; opinion (4)
sentīō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus perceive; feel (4)
septem (indeclinable adj.) seven (§93)
septimus, -a, -um seventh (§93)
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum follow (8)
Ser. = Servius, Serviī *m.* Servius (§16)
- L. Sergius Catilīna, L. Sergiī Catilīnae** *m.* Lucius
 Sergius Catilina, Catiline (§16)
- servitūs, servitūtis** *f.* slavery (6)
Servius, Serviī *m.* Servius (§16)
servō (1-tr.) save, preserve (10)
servus, servī *m.* slave (1)
sex (indeclinable adj.) six (§93)
Sex. = Sextus, Sextī *m.* Sextus (§16)
sextus, -a, -um sixth (§93)
Sextus, Sextī *m.* Sextus (§16)
sī (conj.) if (5)
sīc (adv.) so, thus, in this way, in such a way (5)
signum, signī *n.* sign, signal; standard (11)
similis, simile similar (+ gen. or dat.) (11)
sine (prep. + abl.) without (3)
- socius, -a, -um** allied (4)
socius, sociī *m.* ally, comrade (4)
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun (14)
soleō, solēre, solitus sum be accustomed (11)
solum (adv.) only (7)
sōlus, -a, -um alone, only (9)
solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus loosen; free, release;
 dissolve (15)
soror, sorōris *f.* sister (7)
Sp. = Spurius, Spuriī *m.* Spurius (§16)
speciēs, *speciēi *f.* appearance, aspect (9)
spectō (1-tr.) look (at), observe (14)
spērō (1-tr.) hope (for) (12)
spēs, speī *f.* hope (10)
Spurius, Spuriī *m.* Spurius (§16)
- stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus** stand; stand fast, endure
 (10)
studium, studiī *n.* zeal, enthusiasm; pursuit, study (2)
sub (prep. + acc.) under; up to; (prep. + abl.) under;
 at the foot of; near (6)
—, suī (reflexive pron.) himself, herself, itself;
 themselves (5)
- Sulla, Sullae** *m.* Sulla (§16)
- sum, esse, fuī, futūrus** be; exist (2)
summus, -a, -um highest; top (of); last, final (11)
superō (1-tr.) overcome, conquer; surpass (3)
suus, -a, -um his (own), her (own), its (own); their
 (own) (5)
- T. = Tītus, Tītī** *m.* Titus (§16)
- taedet, taedēre, taesum est** it makes (one) tired or
 sick (15)
- tālis, tāle** such, of such a sort (13)
- tam** (adv.) so (13)
- tamen** (adv.) nevertheless (5)
- tandem** (adv.) finally, at last; *in questions and*
commands, pray, I ask you, then (8)
- tantus, -a, -um** so much, so great (13)
tantum (adverbial acc.) so much, only (so much)
 (13)
- tēlum, tēlī** *n.* spear; weapon (11)
- templum, templī** *n.* temple (7)
- tempus, temporis** *n.* time (9)
- teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus** hold, grasp; keep,
 possess; occupy (3)
- terra, terrae** *f.* land, earth (3)
- terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus** terrify, frighten (7)
- tertius, -a, -um** third (§93)
- Ti. = Tiberius, Tiberiī** *m.* Tiberius (§16)
- Tiberius, Tiberiī** *m.* Tiberius (§16)
- timeō, timēre, timuī, —** fear, be afraid (of) (2)
- tīmor, timōris** *m.* fear (6)
- Tītus, Tītī** *m.* Titus (§16)

- tot** (indeclinable adj.) so many (13)
tōtus, -a, -um whole, entire; all (9)
trādō, trādere, trādīdī, trādītus hand over, surrender;
hand down (7)
trēs, tria three (§93)
Troia, Troiae *f.* Troy (§16)
tū, tuī (personal pron.) you (4)
—, **tuī** (reflexive pron.) yourself (5)
M. Tullius Cicerō, M. Tullii Cicerōnis *m.* Marcus
Tullius Cicero (§63)
tum or **tunc** (adv.) then, at that time (12)
turpis, turpe foul, ugly; base, shameful (15)
tuus, -a, -um your, yours (4); your (own) (5)
- ubi** (conj.) when (5); (interrog. adv.) where, when (5);
(rel. adv.) where (9)
ūllus, -a, -um any (9)
umbra, umbrae *f.* shadow, shade (7)
umquam (adv.) ever (6)
unde (rel. adv.) from where, whence (9);
(interrog. adv.) from where, whence (12)
ūnus, -a, -um one; only (9)
urbs, urbis, -ium *f.* city (6)
ut (conj.) as; when (5); (conj.) *introduces Purpose*
clause, in order that (9); *introduces Indirect*
Command, that (9); (conj.) *introduces negative*
Fear clause, that . . . not (15)
uter, utra, utrum (interrog. adj.) which (of two) (9)
utinam (particle) *introduces an Optative subjunctive* (7)
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum use; experience, enjoy (+ abl.) (10)
utrum (interrog. particle) *introduces the first question*
of a double direct or Indirect Question (12)
utrum . . . an . . . whether . . . or . . . (12)
- valdē** (adv.) strongly (5)
valē/valēte greetings! farewell! (§74)
valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus be strong, be able;
be well, fare well (§74)
C. Valerius Catullus, C. Valerii Catullī *m.* Gaius
Valerius Catullus (§16)
validus, -a, -um strong; healthy (4)
vel (conj.) or; **vel . . . vel . . .** either . . . or . . . ;
(adv.) even (14)
vēlum, vēlī *n.* sail (2)
vēla dare (idiom) to set sail (2)
vendō, vendere, vendidī, vendītus sell (13)
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum come (4)
Venus, Veneris *f.* Venus (§63)
verbum, verbī *n.* word (1)
vereor, verērī, veritus sum be in awe of, respect;
dread, fear (15)
P. Vergilius Marō, P. Vergiliū Marōnis *m.* Publius
Vergilius Maro, Vergil (§63)
vērō (adv.) certainly, indeed; but (in fact) (7)
vērūm (conj.) but (7)
vērus, -a, -um real, true (7)
Vesta, Vestae *f.* Vesta (§63)
vester, vestra, vestrum your (pl.), yours (pl.) (4);
your (pl.) (own) (5)
—, **vestrum/vestrī** (reflexive pron.) yourselves (5)
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus forbid (15)
vetus, veteris old (14)
via, viae *f.* way, road, path, street (1)
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus see (2); *passive*, be seen;
seem (3)
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus conquer, overcome; *intr.*,
win (7)
vir, virī *m.* man; husband (1)
virtūs, virtūtis *f.* manliness, courage; excellence,
virtue (7)
vīs, —, -ium *f.* force, power; violence; *pl.*, strength
(6)
vīta, vītae *f.* life (2)
vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctūrus live, be alive (6)
vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly (14)
vocō (1-tr.) call; summon; name (2)
volō, velle, voluī, — be willing, want, wish (12)
bene velle (idiom) to wish well (12)
male velle (idiom) to wish ill (12)
vōs, vestrum/vestrī (personal pron.) you (pl.) (4)
—, **vestrum/vestrī** (reflexive pron.) yourselves (5)
vōx, vōcis *f.* voice; word (7)
Vulcānus, Vulcānī *m.* Vulcan (§63)
vulnus, vulneris *n.* wound (13)
vultus, vultūs *m. sing. or pl.*, expression; face (15)

ENGLISH TO LATIN VOCABULARY

This English to Latin Vocabulary includes all words from vocabulary lists in *Learn to Read Latin*. Numbers in parentheses refer to the chapter (e.g., 6) or section (e.g., §16) in which the vocabulary word is introduced. Some additional meanings given in vocabulary notes are included.

- ? -ne (enclitic) *added to the first word of a question* (2)
? *expecting the answer "no"* num (12)
? *expecting the answer "yes"* nōnne (12)
- a lot** multum (5)
abandon relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus (8)
about dē (prep. + abl.) (1)
absent absēns, absentis (14)
abundance cōpia, cōpiae *f.* (7)
accept accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus (5)
accomplish perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus (5);
cōficiō, cōficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus (12)
accomplishments rēs gestae, rērum gestārum *f. pl.* (9)
activity rēs, reī *f.* (9)
admit fateor, fatērī, fassus sum (8)
advice cōsiliū, cōsiliī *n.* (1)
advise moneō, monēre, monūī, monitus (9)
Aeneas Aenēās, Aenēae *m.*; Aenēān = *acc. sing.*;
Aenēā = *voc. sing.* (§16)
affair rēs, reī *f.* (9)
after post (adv.) (7)
after post (prep. + acc.) (7)
after postquam (conj.) (5)
afterward post (adv.) (7)
against in (prep. + acc.) (1); contrā (prep. + acc.) (10)
age aetās, aetātis *f.* (14)
aid auxilium, auxiliī *n.* (4)
alas heu (interj.) (§74)
all omnis, omne (8); tōtus, -a, -um (9);
cūnctus, -a, -um (14)
allied socius, -a, -um (4)
allow patior, patī, passus sum (8)
ally socius, sociī *m.* (4)
alone sōlus, -a, -um (9); ūnus, -a, -um (9)
already iam (adv.) (9)
also et (adv.) (1); etiam (adv.) (7); quoque (adv.) (8)
altar āra, ārae *f.* (7)
although etsī (conj.) (5); quamquam (conj.) (5); cum
(conj.) (12)
always semper (adv.) (3)
ambush insidiae, insidiārum *f. pl.* (7)
among inter (prep. + acc.) (6); apud (prep. + acc.) (10)
Amor Amor, Amōris *m.* (§63); Cupīdō, Cupīdinis *m.*
(§63)
ancestors maiōrēs, maiōrum *m. pl.* (11)
ancient antiquus, -a, -um (7)
and et (conj.) (1); -que (enclitic conj.) (1)
and (also) atque (conj.) (3); ac (conj.) (3)
and indeed etenim (conj.) (2)
and not neque, nec (conj.-adv.) (2)
anger ira, irae *f.* (2)
animal animal, animālis, -ium *n.* (6)
another alius, -a, -um (9)
answer respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsus
(2)
Antony Antōnius, Antōniī *m.* (§16)
anxiety cūra, cūrae *f.* (2)
any ūllus, -a, -um (9); aliquī, aliqua, aliquod
(indef. adj.) (14); quī, qua, quod (indef. adj.) (14)
anyone aliquis, aliquid (indef. pron.) (14); quis, quid
(indef. pron.) (14); quisquam, quicquam (indef.
pron.) (14)

- anything** aliquis, aliquid (indef. pron.) (14); quis, quid (indef. pron.) (14); quisquam, quicquam (indef. pron.) (14)
- Apollo** Apollō, Apollinis *m.* (§63)
- appearance** speciēs, *speciēi *f.* (9)
- Appius** Appius, Appii *m.* (abbreviation: App.) (§16)
- approach** accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum (5)
- arise** orior, orīrī, ortus sum (14)
- arms** arma, armōrum *n. pl.* (2)
- army** exercitus, exercitūs *m.* (9)
- art** ars, artis, -ium *f.* (7)
- as** quālis, quāle (13)
- as** quam (adv.) (11)
- as** quemadmodum (rel. adv.) (8)
- as** ut (conj.) (5)
- as great** quantus, -a, -um (13)
- as long as** dōnec (conj.) (13); dum (conj.) (13)
- as many** quot (indeclinable adj.) (13)
- as much** quantus, -a, -um (13)
- as much** quantum (adverbial acc.) (13)
- as soon as possible** quam primum (11)
- it makes (one) ashamed** pudet, pudēre, puduit or pudītum est (15)
- ask** quaerō, quaerere, quaesii/quaesivī, quaesītus (9)
- ask (for)** petō, petere, petiī/petivī, petītus (7); rogō (1-tr.) (12)
- aspect** speciēs, *speciēi *f.* (9)
- at all** omnīnō (adv.) *in negative or virtual negative statements or questions* (6)
- at dawn** primā lūce (11)
- at last** tandem (adv.) (8)
- at least** quidem (postpositive adv.) (4); certē (adv.) (7)
- at that time** tum or tunc (adv.) (12)
- at the foot of** sub (prep. + abl.) (6)
- at the house of** apud (prep. + acc.) (10)
- at this time** hīc (adv.) (§131)
- Athens** Athēnae, Athēnārum *f. pl.* (6)
- attack** petō, petere, petiī/petivī, petītus (7); oppugnō (1-tr.) (10)
- attempt** cōnor (1-tr.) (8)
- attitude** mēns, mentis, -ium *f.* (6)
- audacity** audācia, audāciae *f.* (11)
- Augustus** Augustus, Augusti *m.* (§63)
- Aulus** Aulus, Auli *m.* (abbreviation: A.) (§16)
- authority** imperium, imperiī *n.* (3); auctōritās, auctōritātis *f.* (14)
- auxiliary troops** auxilia, auxiliōrum *n. pl.* (4)
- await** maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsūrus (7); ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) (13)
- away from** ā, ab (prep. + abl.) (1)
- Bacchus** Bacchus, Bacchi *m.* (§63)
- bad** malus, -a, -um (3)
- badly** male (adv.) (5)
- band** manus, manūs *f.* (9)
- banishment** ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliī *n.* (8)
- base** turpis, turpe (15)
- battle** proelium, proeliī *n.* (5)
- battle line** aciēs, aciēi *f.* (9)
- be** sum, esse, fuī, futūrus (2)
- be able** possum, posse, potuī, — (2); valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus (§74)
- be absent** absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus (14)
- be accustomed** soleō, solēre, solitus sum (11)
- be afraid (of)** timeō, timēre, timuī, — (2)
- be alive** vīvō, vīvere, vixī, victūrus (6)
- be born** nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum (10)
- be destroyed** pereō, perīre, periī, peritūrus (11)
- be different** differō, differre, distulī, dilātus (8)
- be distant** absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus (14)
- be distressed** labōrō (1-intr.) (2)
- be done** fiō, fierī, factus sum (13)
- be free (from)** careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus (+ abl.) (6)
- be in awe of** vereor, verērī, veritus sum (15)
- be in charge (of)** praesum, praesesse, praefuī, praefutūrus (12)
- be made** fiō, fierī, factus sum (13)
- be near** adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus (14)
- be obedient** pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritūrus (+ dat.) (8)
- be pleasing** placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum (+ dat.) (8)
- be present** adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus (14)
- be strong** valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus (§74)
- be unwilling** nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — (12)
- be well** valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus (§74)
- be willing** volō, velle, voluī, — (12)
- be without** careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus (+ abl.) (6)
- bear** gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus (4); ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus (5)
- beautiful** pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum (3)
- because** quoniam (conj.) (5); quia (conj.) (13); quod (conj.) (13)
- because of** propter (prep. + acc.) (3); ob (prep. + acc.) (9)
- because of which thing** quārē (adv.) (9)
- become** fiō, fierī, factus sum (13)
- before** ante (adv.) (7); prius (adv.) (11)
- before** ante (prep. + acc.) (7)
- before** antequam (conj.) (13); priusquam (conj.) 13
- beg (for)** orō (1-tr.) (12)
- began** —, —, coepī, coeptus (13)
- begin** incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus (13)
- behind** post (adv.) (7)
- behind** post (prep. + acc.) (7)
- behold!** ecce (interj.) (§74)

- believe** *crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus (+ dat.)* (11)
belonging to the gods *dīvinus, -a, -um (§63)*
best *optimus, -a, -um* (11); *optimē (adv.)* (11)
to betake oneself *sē cōnferre* (14)
better *melior, melius* (11); *melius (adv.)* (11)
between *inter (prep. + acc.)* (6)
beyond *praeter (prep. + acc.)* (12)
big *magnus, -a, -um* (3)
bitter *acerbus, -a, -um* (7)
blind *caecus, -a, -um* (8)
block *obstō, obstāre, obstiti, obstātūrus* (15)
body *corpus, corporis n.* (6)
bold *audāx, audācis* (8)
boldly *audacter or audāciter* (8)
boldness *audācia, audāciae f.* (11)
book *liber, librī m.* (1)
both . . . and . . . *et . . . et . . .* (1)
boundary *finis, finis, -ium m. or f.* (10)
boy *puer, puerī m.* (1)
brave *fortis, forte* (6)
to break camp *castra movēre* (11)
breast *sing. or pl., pectus, pectoris n.* (10)
brief *brevis, breve* (11)
bright *clārus, -a, -um* (4)
bring *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus* (5)
bring about *efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus* (14)
bring back *referō, referre, rettulī, relātus* (10)
bring together *cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus* (14)
brother *frāter, frātris m.* (7)
but *sed (conj.)* (2); *vērūm (conj.)* (7)
but (in fact) *vērō (adv.)* (7)
but if *quodsī (conj.)* (14)
buy *emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus* (13)
by ā, ab *(prep. + abl.)* (3); *per (prep. + acc.)* (4)
by far *longē (adv.)* (11)
by Hercules! *herc(u)le (interj.) (§74); mehercule (interj.) (§74); meherculēs (interj.) (§74)*
by no means *haud (adv.)* (14)
by now *iam (adv.)* (9)
by then *iam (adv.)* (9)
- Caesar** *Caesar, Caesaris m.* (§63)
call *vocō (1-tr.)* (2)
calm *aequus, -a, -um* (10)
(military) camp *castra, castrōrum n. pl.* (11)
can *possum, posse, potuī, —* (2)
capture *capīō, capere, cēpī, captus* (4)
care *cūra, cūrae f.* (2)
carry *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus* (5)
carry (into) *inferō, inferre, intulī, illātus* (12)
carry (off) *rapīō, rapere, rapuī, raptus* (15)
carry away *auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus* (7)
carry in different directions *differō, differre, distulī, dilātus* (7)
- Carthage** *Carthāgō, Carthāginis f.* (6)
case *causa, causae f.* (4)
Catiline *Catīlina, Catīlinae m.* (§16)
Cato *Catō, Catōnis m.* (§63)
Catullus *Catullus, Catullī m.* (§16)
cause *causa, causae f.* (4)
Ceres *Cerēs, Cereris f.* (§63)
certain *certus, -a, -um* (7)
(a) certain *quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (indef. adj.)* (10)
(a) certain person, (a) certain thing *quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (indef. pron.)* (10)
certainly *equidem (adv.)* (4); *quidem (postpositive adv.)* (4); *vērō (adv.)* (7)
chance *fortūna, fortūnae f.* (7); *cāsus, cāsus m.* (10); *fors, fortis, -ium f.* (12)
change *mūtō (1-tr.)* (13)
character *mōrēs, mōrum m. pl.* (10)
charming *grātus, -a, -um* (13)
check *premō, premere, pressī, pressus* (14)
chest *sing. or pl., pectus, pectoris n.* (10)
choose *legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus* (6)
Cicero *Cicerō, Cicerōnis m.* (§63)
circle *orbis, orbis, -ium m.* (15)
citizen *cīvis, cīvis, -ium m. or f.* (6)
citizenry *cīvītās, cīvītātis f.* (7)
citizenship *cīvītās, cīvītātis f.* (7)
city *urbs, urbis, -ium f.* (6)
city walls *moenia, moenium n. pl.* (6)
clear *clārus, -a, -um* (4)
column *agmen, agminis n.* (14)
come *veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum* (4)
come on! *age, agite* (4)
come out *ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum* (13)
come to *accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum* (5)
come to know *nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus* (10); *cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus* (10)
command *imperō (1-intr.)* (9)
command *imperium, imperī n.* (3); *iussum, iussī n.* (9)
commander *imperātor, imperātōris m.* (11)
compare *cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus* (14)
complete *perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus* (5); *cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus* (12)
comrade *socius, sociī m.* (4)
concern *cūra, cūrae f.* (2)
concerning *dē (prep. + abl.)* (1)
it concerns *interest, interesse, interfuit* (15); *rēfert, rēferre, rētulit* (15)
conduct *agō, agere, ēgī, āctus* (4); *gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus* (4)
confess *fateor, fatērī, fassus sum* (8)
conquer *superō (1-tr.)* (3); *vincō, vincere, vicī, victus* (7)

- consider** habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus (2); dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus (4); arbitror (1-tr.) (11)
- consul** cōsul, cōsulis *m.* (8)
- consulship** cōsulātus, cōsulātūs *m.* (9)
- contrary to** contrā (prep. + acc.) (10)
- control** regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus (4)
- Corinna** Corinna, Corinnae *f.* (§63)
- Cornelius Sulla** (L.) Cornēlius Sulla, (L.) Cornēlii Sullae *m.* (§16)
- country** patria, patriae *f.* (1)
- country(side)** *sing. or pl.*, rū, rūris *n.* (6)
- courage** virtūs, virtūtis *f.* (7)
- court** iūs, iūris *n.* (6)
- Crassus** Crassus, Crassī *m.* (§16)
- crime** scelus, sceleris *n.* (13)
- cruel** saevus, -a, -um (13)
- Cupid** Cupīdō, Cupīdinis *m.* (§63)
- custom** mōs, mōris *m.* (10)
- Cynthia** Cynthia, Cynthiae *f.* (§63)
- danger** perīculum, perīculi *n.* (1)
- dare** audeō, audēre, ausus sum (8)
- daring** audāx, audācis (8)
- dark** caecus, -a, -um (8)
- daughter** filia, filiae *f.* (1)
- at dawn** primā lūce (11)
- day** diēs, diēi *m. or f.* (9)
- daylight** lūx, lūcis *f.* (11)
- dear (to)** cārus, -a, -um (+ dat.) (7)
- death** mors, mortis, -ium *f.* (7)
- deceptive** falsus, -a, -um (7)
- decide** cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitutus (15)
- Decimus** Decimus, Decimī *m.* (abbreviation: D.) (§16)
- deed** factum, facti *n.* (1)
- deep** altus, -a, -um (4)
- deep sea** altum, alti *n.* (4)
- deified** dīvus, -a, -um (§63)
- delay** moror (1-tr.) (13)
- delay** mora, morae *f.* (3)
- deliberation** cōsiliū, cōsiliī *n.* (1)
- depart** discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum (5)
- depraved** perditus, -a, -um (13)
- descent** genus, generis *n.* (10)
- desire** optō (1-tr.) (2); cupiō, cupere, cupiī/cupivī, cupītus (7)
- desirous** cupidus, -a, -um (+ gen.) (4)
- desperately** perditē (adv.) (13)
- destiny** fātum, fātī *n.* (5)
- destroy** dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvī, dēlētus (10); perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus (13)
- deter** dēterreō, dēterrere, dēterruī, dēterritus (15)
- Diana** Diāna, Diānae *f.* (§63)
- die** morior, morī, mortuus sum (8); cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus (10); pereō, perire, periī, peritūrus (11); occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsūrus (14)
- differ** differō, differre, distulī, dilātus (7)
- different** dissimilis, dissimile (+ gen. or dat.) (11)
- difficult** difficilis, difficile (6)
- with difficulty** difficiliter or difficulter (adv.) (6)
- diligence** diligentia, diligentiae *f.* (3)
- direct** cōferō, cōferre, contulī, collātus (14)
- Dis** Dīs, Dītis *m.* (§63)
- discover** inveniō, invenire, invēnī, inventus (11)
- it disgusts (one)** piget, pigere, piguit (15)
- disloyal** impius, -a, -um (5)
- displeased** ingrātus, -a, -um (13)
- displeasing** ingrātus, -a, -um (13)
- disposition** ingenium, ingeniī *n.* (7)
- dissimilar** dissimilis, dissimile (+ gen. or dat.) (11)
- dissolve** solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus (15)
- disturbance** mōtus, mōtūs *m.* (8)
- divine** dīvīnus, -a, -um (§63); dīvus, -a, -um (§63)
- divine power** nūmen, nūminis *n.* (15)
- divine spirit** nūmen, nūminis *n.* (15)
- divinity** nūmen, nūminis *n.* (15)
- do** agō, agere, ēgī, āctus (4); faciō, facere, fēcī, factus (4)
- doubt** dubitō (1-tr.) (12)
- doubt** dubium, dubiī *n.* (12)
- doubtful** dubius, -a, -um (12)
- down from** dē (prep. + abl.) (1)
- dread** metuō, metuere, metuī, — (14); vereor, verērī, veritus sum (15)
- dread** metus, metūs *m.* (10)
- drive** agō, agere, ēgī, āctus (4)
- drive (off)** pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus (9)
- during** inter (prep. + acc.) (6)
- dutiful** pius, -a, -um (5)
- duty** mūnus, mūneris *n.* (8)
- each** quīque, quaque, quodque (indef. adj.) (14)
- each man, each woman, each thing** quisque, quidque (quicque) (indef. pron.) (14)
- earlier** ante (adv.) (7)
- earth** terra, terrae *f.* (3)
- easily** facile (adv.) (6)
- east** oriēns, orientis *m.* (14)
- easy** facilis, facile (6)
- effort** labor, labōris *m.* (10)
- eight** octō (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
- eighth** octāvus, -a, -um (§93)
- either . . . or . . .** aut . . . aut . . . (7); vel . . . vel . . . (14)
- empire** imperium, imperiī *n.* (3)
- encourage** hortor (1-tr.) (9)
- end** finis, finis, -ium *m. or f.* (10)

- endure** *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus* (5); *patior, patī, passus sum* (8); *perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus* (10); *stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus* (10)
- (personal) enemy** *inimīcus, inimīcī m.* (3)
- (public) enemy** *hostis, hostis, -ium m.* (6)
- enjoy** *ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum* (+ abl.) (10)
- enmity** *inimīcītia, inimīcītiaē f.* (5)
- enough** *satis or sat* (adv.) (10); *satis or sat* (indeclinable subst.) (10)
- enrolled fathers** *patrēs cōscrip̄tī* (voc. pl.) (6)
- enthusiasm** *studium, studiī n.* (2)
- entire** *tōtus, -a, -um* (9)
- entirely** *omnīnō* (adv.) (6)
- envoy** *lēgātus, lēgātī m.* (10)
- envy** *invidia, invidiaē f.* (4)
- epistle** *litterae, litterārum f. pl.* (12)
- equitable** *aequus, -a, -um* (10)
- err** *errō* (1-intr.) (2)
- especially** *maximē* (adv.) (11)
- establish** *iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus* (11); *cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitutus* (15)
- estimate** *aestimō* (1-tr.) (13)
- even** *aequus, -a, -um* (10)
- even** *et* (adv.) (1); *etiam* (adv.) (7); *vel* (adv.) (14)
- not even** *nē . . . quidem* (4)
- ever** *umquam* (adv.) (6)
- every** *omnis, omne* (6); *quīque, quaque, quodque* (indef. adj.) (14)
- every man, every woman, every thing** *quisque, quidque* (quicque) (indef. pron.) (14)
- evil** *malus, -a, -um* (3)
- excellence** *virtūs, virtūtis f.* (7)
- except** *praeter* (prep. + acc.) (12)
- exchange** *mūtō* (1-tr.) (13)
- exhort** *hortor* (1-tr.) (9)
- exile** *ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliū n.* (8)
- exist** *sum, esse, fuī, futūrus* (2)
- expect** *ex(s)pectō* (1-tr.) (13)
- expel** *ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus* (11)
- experience** *experior, experīrī, expertus sum* (8); *patior, patī, passus sum* (8); *ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum* (+ abl.) (10)
- expression** *sing. or pl., vultus, vultūs m.* (15)
- eye** *oculus, oculī m.* (8)
- eyes** *lūmina, lūminum n. pl.* (13)
- face** *sing. or pl., ōs, ōris n.* (14); *sing. or pl., vultus, vultūs m.* (15)
- facing** *contrā* (prep. + acc.) (10)
- the fact that** *quod* (conj.) (15)
- (political) faction** *sing. or pl., pars, partis, -ium f.* (7)
- faith** *fidēs, fidēi f.* (9)
- fall** *cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus* (10); *occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsūrus* (14)
- fall** *cāsus, cāsūs m.* (10)
- false** *falsus, -a, -um* (7)
- fame** *fāma, fāmaē f.* (1)
- familiar** *nōtus, -a, -um* (10)
- family** *gēns, gentis, -ium f.* (12)
- famous** *clārus, -a, -um* (4)
- far** *longus, -a, -um* (11); *longē* (adv.) (11)
- fare well** *valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus* (§74)
- farewell!** *valē/valēte* (§74)
- farmer** *agricola, agricolae m.* (1)
- far-reaching** *longus, -a, -um* (11)
- fate** *fātum, fātī n.* (5)
- father** *pater, patris m.* (6)
- (enrolled) fathers** *patrēs cōscrip̄tī* (voc. pl.) (6)
- favor** *pāx, pācis f.* (8); *grātia, grātiaē f.* (12)
- fear** *timeō, timēre, timuī, —* (2); *metuō, metuere, metuī, —* (14); *vereor, verērī, veritus sum* (15)
- fear** *timor, timōris m.* (6); *metus, metūs, m.* (10)
- feel** *sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus* (4)
- feeling** *sententia, sententiaē f.* (4); *sēnsus, sēnsūs m.* (11)
- few** *paucī, paucae, pauca* (4)
- fickle** *levis, leve* (8)
- field** *ager, agrī m.* (1)
- fierce** *ācer, ācris, ācre* (6)
- fifth** *quintus, -a, -um* (§93)
- fight** *pugnō* (1-intr.) (3)
- final** *summus, -a, -um* (11)
- finally** *tandem* (adv.) (8)
- find** *inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus* (11)
- fire** *ignis, ignis, -ium m.* (11)
- first** *prīmus, -a, -um* (§93); *prīmum* (adv.) (11)
- five** *quīque* (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
- flat plain** *campus, campī m.* (11)
- flee** *fugiō, fugere, fugī, fugitūrus* (7)
- flight** *fuga, fugae f.* (8)
- follow** *sequor, sequī, secūtus sum* (8)
- for** *prō* (prep. + abl.) (3)
- for** *nam* (conj.) (2); *enim* (postpositive conj.) (2)
- for a great part** *magnam partem* (adverbial acc.) (13)
- for a long time** *diū* (adv.) (11)
- for in fact** *etenim* (conj.) (2); *namque* (conj.) (2)
- for my part** *equidem* (adv.) (4)
- for the first time** *prīmum* (adv.) (11)
- for the greatest part** *maximam partem* (adverbial acc.) (13)
- for the most part** *maximam partem* (adverbial acc.) (13)
- for the purpose of** *ad* (prep. + acc.) (13); *causā* (+ preceding gen.) (13); *grātiā* (+ preceding gen.) (13)
- for the sake of** *causā* (+ preceding gen.) (13); *grātiā* (+ preceding gen.) (13)
- forbid** *prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus* (15); *vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus* (15)

(what is divinely) forbidden nefās (indeclinable noun) *n.* (12)
 force vīs, —, -ium *f.* (6)
 forces cōpia, cōpiarum *f. pl.* (7)
 forget oblivīscor, oblivīscī, oblivīsus sum (+ gen.) (12)
 to form a plan cōsiliū capere (4)
 fortunate fēlix, fēlicis (6)
 fortune fortūna, fortūnae *f.* (7)
 forum forum, forī *n.* (3)
 foul turpis, turpe (15)
 four quattuor (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
 fourth quartus, -a, -um (§93)
 free liberō (1-tr.) (6); solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus (15)
 free liber, libera, liberum (3)
 freedom libertās, libertātis *f.* (8)
 friend amīcus, amīcī *m.* (3)
 friendly amīcus, -a, -um (+ dat.) (3)
 friendship amīcītia, amīcītia *f.* (5)
 frighten terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus (7)
 from quīn (conj.) *introduces Prevention clause* (15);
 quōminus (conj.) *introduces Prevention clause* (15)
 (away) from ā, ab (prep. + abl.) (1)
 (down) from dē (prep. + abl.) (1)
 (out) from ē, ex (prep. + abl.) (1)
 from here hīc (adv.) (§131)
 from that place inde (adv.) (§131)
 from that time inde (adv.) (§131)
 from there illīc (adv.) (§131); inde (adv.) (§131)
 from where unde (rel. adv.) (9); unde (interrog. adv.) (12)
 Gaius Gaius, Gaiī *m.* (abbreviation: C.) (§16)
 general imperātor, imperātōris *m.* (11)
 get parō (1-tr.) (9)
 gift dōnum, dōnī *n.* (1); mūnus, mūneris *n.* (8)
 gird (on oneself) cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus (15)
 girl puella, puellae *f.* (1)
 give dō, dare, dedī, datus (2); dōnō (1-tr.) (2)
 give an order imperō (1-intr.) (+ dat.) (9)
 give in exchange mūtō (1-tr.) (13)
 glory glōria, glōriae *f.* (4)
 Gnaeus Gnaeus, Gnaei *m.* (abbreviation: Gn.) (§16)
 go eō, ire, ī/ivī, itum (3); cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum (5)
 to go sē cōferre (14)
 go away abeō, abire, abiī, abitum (5); discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum (5)
 go back redeō, redire, redī, reditum (5)
 go out ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum (13)
 go to accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum (5)
 god deus, deī *m.* (1)
 goddess dea, deae *f.* (1)
 gold aurum, aurī *n.* (1)

good bonus, -a, -um (3)
 good day! salvē/salvēte (§74)
 Gracchus Gracchus, Gracchī *m.* (§16)
 grant dō, dare, dedī, datus (2)
 grasp teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (3)
 grateful grātus, -a, -um (13)
 gratitude grātia, grātia *f.* (12)
 great magnus, -a, -um (3)
 greater maior, maius (11)
 greatest maximus, -a, -um (11)
 greatly magnopere (adv.) (10)
 Greece Graecia, Graeciae *f.* (§16)
 greetings! valē/valēte (§74)
 guile ars, artis, -ium *f.* (7)
 Hades Dīs, Dītis *m.* (§63)
 hand manus, manūs *f.* (9)
 hand down trādō, trādere, trādīdī, trādītus (7)
 hand over trādō, trādere, trādīdī, trādītus (7)
 handsome pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum (3)
 Hannibal Hannibal, Hannibalis *m.* (§63)
 happen fiō, fierī, factus sum (13); accidō, accidere, accidī, — (14)
 happy laetus, -a, -um (3); fēlix, fēlicis (6)
 hard dūrus, -a, -um (5)
 hardly vix (adv.) (14)
 hardship labor, labōris *m.* (10)
 harsh dūrus, -a, -um (5); acerbus, -a, -um (7)
 hate ōdī, ōdisse (defective verb) (5)
 hatred odium, odī *n.* (3)
 have habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus (2)
 have begun —, —, coepī, coeptus (13)
 he is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)
 head caput, capitis *n.* (15)
 health salūs, salūtis *f.* (§74)
 healthy validus, -a, -um (4)
 hear audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus (4)
 hear (of) accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus (5)
 heart *sing. or pl.*, pectus, pectoris *n.* (10)
 heaven caelum, caelī *n.* (4)
 heavy gravis, grave (8)
 height altum, altī *n.* (4)
 hello! salvē/salvēte (§74)
 help auxilium, auxiliī *n.* (4)
 hence hīc (adv.) (§131)
 henceforth hīc (adv.) (§131)
 her is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)
 her (own) suus, -a, -um (5)
 here hīc (adv.) (§131)
 herself —, suī (reflexive pron.) (5)
 hesitate dubitō (1-tr.) (12)
 hesitation dubium, dubī *n.* (12)
 hidden caecus, -a, -um (8)
 high altus, -a, -um (4)

- highest** summus, -a, -um (11)
him is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)
himself —, suī (reflexive pron.) (5)
hinder moror (1-tr.) (13); impediō, impedīre, impediī/impediī, impeditus (15); obstō, obstāre, obstiti, obstāturus (15)
his (own) suus, -a, -um (5)
history rēs gestae, rērum gestārum *f. pl.* (9)
hither hūc (adv.) (§131)
hold habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus (2); teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (3)
home domus, domī *f.* (6); domus, domūs (9)
homeland patria, patriae *f.* (1)
honor honor or honōs, honōris *m.* (13)
honorable honestus, -a, -um (10)
hope spēs, speī *f.* (10)
hope (for) spērō (1-tr.) (12)
Horace (Q.) Horātius Flaccus, (Q.) Horātii Flaccī *m.* (§16)
hostile inimīcus, -a, -um (+ dat.) (3)
hostility inimīcitia, inimīcitiā *f.* (5)
house domus, domī *f.* (6); domus, domūs *f.* (9)
how quemadmodum (interrog. adv.) (8); quō modō (interrog. adv.) (8); quam (adv.) (11)
how great quantus, -a, -um (13)
how many quot (indeclinable adj.) (13)
how much quantus, -a, -um (13)
how much quantum (adverbial acc.) (13)
however autem (postpositive conj.) (6)
huge ingēns, ingentis (6)
human being homō, hominis *m.* (6)
humble humilis, humile (11)
hundred centum (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
hundredth centēsimus, -a, -um (§93)
husband vir, virī *m.* (1)
- I** ego, meī (personal pron.) (4)
I ask you tandem (adv.) (8)
if sī (conj.) (5)
if . . . not nisi (conj.) (5)
Ilium Īlium, Īliī *n.* (§16)
ill-will invidia, invidiā *f.* (4)
immortal immortalis, immortalē (7)
impede impediō, impedīre, impediī/impediī, impeditus (15)
important gravis, grave (8)
it is important interest, interesse, interfuit (15); rēfert, rēferre, rētulit (15)
in in (prep. + abl.) (1)
in another way aliter (adv.) (9)
in fact enim (postpositive conj.) (2)
in front of prō (prep. + abl.) (3); ante (prep. + acc.) (7)
in opposition contrā (adv.) (10)
- in order that** ut (conj.) *introduces Purpose clause* (9)
in order that . . . not nē (adv.) *introduces negative Purpose clause* (9)
in return for prō (prep. + abl.) (3)
in such a way sīc (adv.) (5); ita (adv.) (7)
in that place ibi (adv.) (§131); illic (adv.) (§131)
in the manner in which quemadmodum (rel. adv.) (8)
in the presence of apud (prep. + acc.) (10)
in this place hīc (adv.) (§131)
in this way sīc (adv.) (5); ita (adv.) (7)
in turn contrā (adv.) (10)
in what way quō modō (interrog. adv.) (8)
inadequately parum (adv.) (11)
indeed equidem (adv.) (4); quidem (postpositive adv.) (4); vērō (adv.) (7)
indeed enim (postpositive conj.) (2)
inequitable inīquus, -a, -um (10)
inflict (on) inferō, inferre, intulī, illātus (12)
influence auctōritās, auctōritātis *f.* (14)
inhabitant incola, incolae *m.* (3)
instead of prō (prep. + abl.) (3)
intention mēns, mentis, -ium *f.* (6)
into in (prep. + acc.) (1)
it irks (one) piget, pigēre, piguit (15)
iron ferrum, ferrī *n.* (1)
island īnsula, īnsulae *f.* (1)
it is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)
it causes (one) to repent or **regret** paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit (15)
it concerns interest, interesse, interfuit (15); rēfert, rēferre, rētulit (15)
it disgusts (one) piget, pigēre, piguit (15)
it irks (one) piget, pigēre, piguit (15)
it is important interest, interesse, interfuit (15); rēfert, rēferre, rētulit (15)
it is permitted licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est (14)
it is proper oportet, oportēre, oportuit (14)
it is right oportet, oportēre, oportuit (14)
it makes (one) ashamed pudet, pudēre, puduit or puditum est (15)
it makes (one) sick taedet, taedēre, taesum est (15)
it makes (one) tired taedet, taedēre, taesum est (15)
it moves (one) to pity miseret, miserēre, miseruit or miseritum est (15)
Italy Italia, Italiae *f.* (1)
its (own) suus, -a, -um (5)
itself —, suī (reflexive pron.) (5)
- jealousy** invidia, invidiā *f.* (4)
joy gaudium, gaudiī *n.* (8)
judge arbitror (1-tr.) (11)
judgment cōsiliū, cōsiliī *n.* (1); iūs, iūris *n.* (6)
Julia Iūlia, Iūliae *f.* (§16)

- Julius Caesar** (C.) Iūlius Caesar, (C.) Iūliū Caesaris *m.* (§63)
- Juno** Iūnō, Iūnōnis *f.* (§63)
- Jupiter** Iuppiter, Iovis *m.* (§63)
- just** aequus, -a, -um (10)
- just modo** (adv.) (12)
- just now** modo (adv.) (12)
- justly** iūre (adv.) (6)
- keen** ācer, ācris, ācre (6)
- keenness** aciēs, aciēi *f.* (9)
- keep** teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (3)
- kill** interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus (5);
cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcī, cōfectus (12)
- kind** genus, generis *n.* (10)
- kindness** grātia, grātia*e f.* (12)
- king** rēx, rēgis *m.* (6)
- know** *perfect*, nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus (10); *perfect*,
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus (10);
sciō, scīre, scīi/scīvī, scītus (11)
- known** nōtus, -a, -um (10)
- labor** labor, labōris *m.* (10)
- lack** careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus (+ abl.) (6)
- land** terra, terrae *f.* (3)
- large** magnus, -a, -um (3)
- last** summus, -a, -um (11)
- later** post (adv.) (7)
- law** iūs, iūris *n.* (6); lēx, lēgis *f.* (8)
to pass a law lēgem ferre (8)
- lay** iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus (11)
- lead** dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus (4)
- leader** dux, ducis *m. or f.* (10)
- learn** nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus (10); cognōscō,
cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus (10)
- learn (of)** accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus (5)
- leave (behind)** relinquo, relinquere, reliquī, relictus (8)
- legate** lēgātus, lēgātī *m.* (10)
- legion** legiō, legiōnis *f.* (11)
- Lesbia** Lesbia, Lesbiae *f.* (§63)
- letter** litterae, litterārum *f. pl.* (12)
- letter (of the alphabet)** littera, litterae *f.* (12)
- level** aequus, -a, -um (10)
- Liber** Līber, Līberī *m.* (§63)
- lieutenant** lēgātus, lēgātī *m.* (10)
- life** vīta, vītae *f.* (2)
- life force** anima, animae *f.* (1)
- lifetime** aetās, aetātis *f.* (14)
- light** lūx, lūcis *f.* (11); lūmen, lūminis *n.* (13)
- light** levis, leve (8)
- limit** modus, modī *m.* (8); fīnis, fīnis, -ium *m. or f.* (10)
- line (of march)** agmen, agminis *n.* (14)
- listen (to)** audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus (4)
- literature** litterae, litterārum *f. pl.* (12)
- little** parvus, -a, -um (3)
- a little** paulum, *paulī *n.* (11)
- live** vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctūrus (6)
- Livia** Līvia, Līviae *f.* (§16)
- lo** ecce (interj.) (§74)
- long** longus, -a, -um (11)
- long for** cupiō, cupere, cupīi/cupīvī, cupītus (7)
- long-standing** longus, -a, -um (11)
- a long way** longē (adv.) (11)
- look** ecce (interj.) (§74)
- look (at)** spectō (1-tr.) (14)
- loosen** solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus (15)
- lord** dominus, dominī *m.* (1)
- lose** perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus (13)
- (morally) lost** perditus, -a, -um (13)
- a lot** multum (adv.) (5)
- love** amō (1-tr.) (2)
- love** amor, amōris *m.* (6)
- Love** Amor, Amōris *m.* (§63)
- loyal** pius, -a, -um (5)
- loyalty** fidēs, fideī *f.* (9)
- Lucius** Lūcius, Lūciī *m.* (abbreviation: L.) (§16)
- luck** fors, fortis, -ium *f.* (12)
- lucky** fēlix, fēlicis (6)
- make** faciō, facere, fēcī, factus (4); efficiō, efficere,
effēcī, effectus (14)
- make a mistake** errō (1-intr.) (2)
- to make a speech** orātiōnem habēre (10)
- to make camp** castra pōnere (11)
- man** vir, virī *m.* (1); homō, hominis *m.* (6)
- manage** gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus (4)
- Manius** Manius, Maniī *m.* (abbreviation: M'.) (§16)
- manliness** virtūs, virtūtis *f.* (7)
- manner** modus, modī *m.* (8)
- many** multus, -a, -um (3)
- Marcus** Marcus, Marcī *m.* (abbreviation: M.) (§16)
- Marcus Antonius (Marc Antony)** Marcus Antōnius,
Marcī Antōniī *m.* (§16)
- marketplace** forum, forī *n.* (3)
- Mars** Mars, Martis *m.* (§63)
- master** dominus, dominī *m.* (1)
- matter** rēs, rei *f.* (9)
- me** ego, meī (personal pron.) (4)
- measure** modus, modī *m.* (8)
- memory** memoria, memoriae *f.* (12)
- Mercury** Mercurius, Mercuriī *m.* (§63)
- meter** modus, modī *m.* (8)
- middle (of)** medius, -a, -um (10)
- midst** medium, mediī *n.* (10)
- military camp** castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (11)
- mind** animus, animī *m.* (2); mēns, mentis, -ium *f.* (6)
- mine** meus, -a, -um (4)
- Minerva** Minerva, Minervae *f.* (§63)

- miserable** miser, misera, miserum (3)
misfortune cāsus, cāsūs *m.* (10)
money pecūnia, pecūniae *f.* (1)
moon lūna, lūnae *f.* (14)
morally lost perditus, -a, -um (13)
more plūs/plūrēs, plūra (11); plūs (adv.) (11)
more (greatly) magis (adv.) (11)
moreover autem (postpositive conj.) (6)
mortal mortālis, mortāle (7)
most plūrimus, -a, -um (11); plūrimum (adv.) (11)
most greatly maximē (adv.) (11)
mother māter, mātris *f.* (6)
motion mōtus, mōtūs *m.* (9)
mountain mōns, montis, -ium *m.* (12)
mouth *sing. or pl.,* ōs, ōris *n.* (14)
move moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus (2); cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum (5)
movement mōtus, mōtūs *m.* (9)
much multus, -a, -um (3); multum (adv.) (5)
multitude agmen, agminis *n.* (14)
my meus, -a, -um (4)
my (own) meus, -a, -um (5)
myself —, meī (reflexive pron.) (5)
- name** nōmen, nōminis *n.* (14)
name vocō (1-tr.) (2)
nation gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* (12)
(natural) talent ingenium, ingenii *n.* (7)
nature ingenium, ingenii *n.* (7); nātūra, nātūrae *f.* (7)
near sub (prep. + abl.) (6)
necessary necesse (indeclinable adj.) (14)
neither (of two) neuter, neutra, neutrum (9)
neither . . . nor . . . neque/nec . . . neque/nec . . . (2)
Neptune Neptūnus, Neptūnī *m.* (§63)
Nero Nerō, Nerōnis *m.* (§63)
Nero Claudius Caesar Nerō Claudius Caesar, Nerōnis Claudii Caesaris *m.* (§63)
never numquam (adv.) (6)
nevertheless tamen (adv.) (5)
new novus, -a, -um (7)
night nox, noctis, -ium *f.* (9)
nine novem (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
ninth nōnus, -a, -um (§93)
no nullus, -a, -um (9)
no one nēmō, nēminis *m. or f.* (9)
not nōn (adv.) (2); nē (adv.) (7)
not any nullus, -a, -um (9)
not at all nihil (adverbial acc.) (13); haud (adv.) (14)
not enough parum (indeclinable subst. or adv.) (11)
not even nē . . . quidem (4)
not know nesciō, nescire, nesciī/nescivī, nescītus (11)
not only . . . but also . . . nōn solum . . . sed/vērum etiam . . . (7)
not want nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — (12)
- not wish** nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — (12)
nothing nihil, nīl (indeclinable noun) *n.* (3); nihilum, nihili *n. or nīl, nīli n.* (13)
now nunc (adv.) (3); iam (adv.) (9); modo (adv.) (12)
numen nūmen, nūminis *n.* (15)
- O** ō (interj.) (1)
obey pāreō, pāreere, pāruī, pāritūrus (+ dat.) (8)
observe spectō (1-tr.) (14)
obtain parō (1-tr.) (9)
occupy teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (3)
occurrence cāsus, cāsūs *m.* (10)
of such a sort tālis, tāle (13)
of which sort quālis, quāle (13)
(political) office honor or honōs, honōris *m.* (13)
often saepe (adv.) (8)
oh heu (interj.) (§74)
old antiqūus, -a, -um (7); vetus, veteris (14)
on in (prep. + abl.) (1)
on account of propter (prep. + acc.) (3); ob (prep. + acc.) (9)
on account of which thing quam ob rem (adv.) (9)
on behalf of prō (prep. + abl.) (3)
on this side . . . on that side . . . hinc . . . hinc . . . (§131); hinc . . . illinc . . . (§131)
one ūnus, -a, -um (9)
only sōlus, -a, -um (9); ūnus, -a, -um (9)
only solum (adv.) (7); modo (adv.) (12)
only (so much) tantum (adverbial acc.) (13)
onto in (prep. + acc.) (1)
(the) open medium, mediū *n.* (10)
opinion sententia, sententiae *f.* (4)
oppress opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus (14)
or aut (conj.) (7); an (conj.) *introduces an alternative question* (12); vel (conj.) (14)
or not an nōn *in direct question* (12); necne *in Indirect Question* (12)
oration ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis *f.* (10)
orator ōrātor, ōrātōris *m.* (10)
Orcus Orcus, Orcī *m.* (§63)
order iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus (2); imperō (1-intr.) (+ dat.) (9)
order iussum, iussī, *n.* (9)
origin genus, generis *n.* (10)
other alius, -a, -um (9)
(the) other cēterus, -a, -um (13)
(the) other (of two) alter, altera, alterum (9)
otherwise aliter (adv.) (9)
ought dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus (2)
our noster, nostra, nostrum (4)
our (own) noster, nostra, nostrum (5)
ours noster, nostra, nostrum (4)
ourselves —, nostrum/nostrī (reflexive pron.) (5)
out from ē, ex (prep. + abl.) (1)

- overcome** superō (1-tr.) (3); vincō, vincere, vicī, victus (7)
- overpower** premō, premere, pressī, pressus (14)
- overwhelm** opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus (14)
- Ovidius Naso (Ovid)** (P.) Ovidius Nasō, (P.) Ovidius Nasōnis *m.* (§63)
- owe** dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus (2)
- part** pars, partis, -ium *f.* (7)
- pass away** pereō, perīre, perīi, peritūrus (11)
- to pass a law** lēgem ferre (8)
- path** via, viae *f.* (1)
- to pay the penalty** poenās dare (2)
- peace** pāx, pācis *f.* (8)
- penalty** poena, poenae *f.* (2)
- to pay the penalty** poenās dare (2)
- (a) people** gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* (12)
- (the) people** populus, populī *m.* (3)
- perceive** sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus (4)
- perception** sēnsus, sēnsūs *m.* (11)
- perform** gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus (4)
- perish** pereō, perīre, perīi, peritūrus (11)
- permit** patior, patī, passus sum (8)
- it is permitted** licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est (14)
- (what is) permitted** fās (indeclinable noun) *n.* (12)
- personal enemy** inimīcus, inimīci *m.* (3)
- to pitch camp** castra pōnere (11)
- pitiable** miser, misera, miserum (3)
- it moves (one) to pity** miseret, miserēre, miseruit or miseritum est (15)
- place** pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus (4)
- place** locus, locī *m.*; *pl.*, loca, locōrum *n.* *pl.* or *sometimes* locī, locōrum *m.* *pl.* (8)
- place around** circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus (15)
- (flat) plain** campus, campī *m.* (11)
- plan** cōnsilium, cōnsilii *n.* (1)
- to form a plan** cōnsilium capere (4)
- to plead a case** causam agere (4)
- pleasant** dulcis, dulce (15)
- please** placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum (+ dat.) (8)
- pleased** grātus, -a, -um (13)
- pleasing** grātus, -a, -um (13)
- plot** īnsidiae, īnsidiārum *f. pl.* (7)
- Pluto** Dīs, Dītis *m.* (§63)
- poem** carmen, carminis *n.* (2)
- poet** poēta, poētae *m.* (1)
- point out** mōnstrō (1-tr.) (2)
- political faction** *sing. or pl.*, pars, partis, -ium *f.* (7)
- political office** honor or honōs, honōris *m.* (13)
- Pompeius Magnus (Pompey the Great)** (Cn.) Pompeius Magnus, (Cn.) Pompeiī Magnī *m.* (§16)
- ponder** cōgitō (1-tr.) (2)
- populace** populus, populī *m.* (3)
- Porcius Cato (M.)** Porcius Catō, (M.) Porciī Catōnis *m.* (§63)
- possess** teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (3)
- power** imperium, imperiī *n.* (3); vīs, —, -ium *f.* (6)
- practice** mōs, mōris *m.* (10)
- praise** laudō (1-tr.) (3)
- pray** tandem (adv.) (8)
- precious** cārus, -a, -um (+ dat.) (7)
- prefer** mālō, mālle, mālūi, — (12); praeferō, praeferre, praetulī, praelātus (12)
- prepare (for)** parō (1-tr.) (9)
- present** dōnō (1-tr.) (2)
- preserve** servō (1-tr.) (10)
- press (hard)** premō, premere, pressī, pressus (14)
- press on** opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus (14)
- prevent** dēterreō, dēterrēre, dēterrūi, dēterritus (15); prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus (15)
- previously** ante (adv.) (7)
- price** pretium, pretiī *n.* (13)
- proceed** gradior, gradī, gressus sum (13)
- to proceed (quickly)** sē ferre (5)
- prohibit** prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus (15)
- it is proper** oportet, oportēre, oportuit (14)
- property** rēs, rei *f.* (9)
- provided that** dum (conj.) (13); dummodo (conj.) (13); modo (conj.) (13)
- province** prōvincia, prōvinciae *f.* (3)
- public** pūblicus, -a, -um (9)
- public enemy** hostis, hostis, -ium *m.* (6)
- public square** forum, forī *n.* (3)
- Publius** Publius, Publiī *m.* (abbreviation: P.) (§16)
- punishment** poena, poenae *f.* (2)
- purpose** mēns, mentis, -ium *f.* (6)
- pursuit** studium, studiī *n.* (2)
- push** pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus (9)
- put** pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus (4)
- put in charge (of)** praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus (12)
- queen** rēgīna, rēgīnae *f.* (1)
- Quintus** Quintus, Quintī *m.* (abbreviation: Q.) (§16)
- race** genus, generis *n.* (10)
- radiance** lūmen, lūminis *n.* (13)
- rational soul** animus, animī *m.* (2)
- read** legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus (6)
- readily** facile (adv.) (6)
- real** vērus, -a, -um (7)
- reason** causa, causae *f.* (4)
- receive** accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus (5)
- reckless** audāx, audācis (8)

- recklessly** audacter or audāciter (adv.) (8);
perditē (adv.) (13)
- recklessness** audācia, audāciae *f.* (11)
- reckon** faciō, facere, fēcī, factus (13)
- recognize** nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus (10); cognōscō,
cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus (10)
- it causes (one) to regret** paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit
(15)
- release** solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus (15)
- reliable** certus, -a, -um (7)
- remain** maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus (7)
- remaining** reliquus, -a, -um (14)
- remaining part (of)** cēterus, -a, -um (13)
- remarkable** ingēns, ingentis (6)
- remember** meminī, meminisse (defective verb) (5)
- remind** moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus (9)
- remove** auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus (7)
- Remus** Remus, Remī *m.* (§16)
- renown** glōria, glōriae *f.* (4)
- it causes (one) to repent** paenitet, paenitēre,
paenituit (15)
- report** ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (5); perferō, perferre,
pertulī, perlātus (10); referō, referre, rettulī,
relātus (10)
- report** fāma, fāmae *f.* (1)
- republic** rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae *f.* (9)
- reputation** fāma, fāmae *f.* (1)
- resentment** invidia, invidiae *f.* (4)
- respect** vereor, verērī, veritus sum (15)
- respect** honor or honōs, honōris *m.* (13)
- respectable** honestus, -a, -um (10)
- respond** respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōsus
(2)
- rest (of)** cēterus, -a, -um (13); reliquus, -a, -um (14)
- return** redeō, redīre, rediī, reditum (5)
- revolution** rēs novae, rērum novārum *f. pl.* (9)
- reward** dōnō (1-tr.) (2)
- rhythm** modus, modi *m.* (8)
- right** iūs, iūris *n.* (6)
- (what is divinely) right** fās (indeclinable noun) *n.* (12)
- it is right** oportet, oportēre, oportuit (14)
- rightly** iūre (adv.) (6)
- ring** orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* (15)
- rise** orior, orīrī, ortus sum (14)
- road** via, viae *f.* (1)
- Roman** Rōmānus, -a, -um (3)
- (the) Romans** Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum *m. pl.* (3)
- Rome** Rōma, Rōmae *f.* (6)
- Romulus** Rōmulus, Rōmuli *m.* (§16)
- ruined** perditus, -a, -um (13)
- ruinously** perditē (adv.) (13)
- rule** regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus (4)
- rumor** fāma, fāmae *f.* (1); rūmor, rūmōris *m.* (12)
- to rush forth** sē ēicere (11)
- sacrilege** nefās (indeclinable noun) *n.* (12)
- safety** salūs, salūtis *f.* (§74)
- sail** vēlum, vēlī *n.* (2)
- to set sail** vēla dare (2)
- sailor** nauta, nautae *m.* (1)
- same** idem, eadem, idem (8)
- savage** saevus, -a, -um (13)
- save** servō (1-tr.) (10)
- say** dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus (4); ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus
(5); inquam (defective verb) (8); for (1-tr.) (15)
- to say "greetings" or hello** salūtem dīcere (§74)
- saying** dictum, dictī *n.* (6)
- scarcely** vix (adv.) (14)
- sea** mare, maris, *-ium *n.* (6)
- search for** quaerō, quaerere, quaesīi/quaesīvī,
quaesītus (9)
- second** secundus, -a, -um (§93)
- secret** caecus, -a, -um (8)
- see** videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus (2)
- seek** petō, petere, petiī/petivī, petitus (7); quaerō,
quaerere, quaesīi/quaesīvī, quaesītus (9)
- seem** passive, videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus (3)
- seize** rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus (15)
- self, -selves** ipse, ipsa, ipsum (5)
- sell** vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditus (13)
- Sempronius Gracchus** (C. or Ti.) Semprōnius,
(C. or Ti.) Semprōniī Gracchī *m.* (§16)
- senate** senātus, senātūs *m.* (9)
- senators** patrēs cōscriptī (voc. pl.) (6)
- send** mittō, mittere, misi, missus (4)
- sense** sēnsus, sēnsūs *m.* (11)
- Sergius Catilina (Catiline)** (L.) Sergius Catilina, (L.)
Sergii Catilīnae *m.* (§16)
- serious** gravis, grave (8)
- service** mūnus, mūneris *n.* (8)
- Servius** Servius, Serviī *m.* (abbreviation: Ser.) (§16)
- set** occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsūrus (14)
- set aside** pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus (4)
- set forth** proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum (10)
- set in motion** moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus (2)
- set out** proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum (10)
- to set sail** vēla dare (2)
- set up** cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitutus
(15)
- seven** septem (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
- seventh** septimus, -a, -um (§93)
- severe** gravis, grave (8)
- Sextus** Sextus, Sexti *m.* (abbreviation: Sex.) (§16)
- shade** umbra, umbrae *f.* (7)
- shadow** umbra, umbrae *f.* (7)
- shameful** turpis, turpe (15)
- sharp** ācer, ācris, ācre (6)
- sharp edge** aciēs, aciēī *f.* (9)
- she is, ea, id** (personal pron.) (4)

- short** brevis, breve (11)
show mōnstrō (1-tr.) (2)
it makes (one) sick taedet, taedēre, taesum est (15)
sign signum, signī *n.* (11)
signal signum, signī *n.* (11)
similar similis, simile (+ gen. or dat.) (11)
since quoniam (conj.) (5); cum (conj.) (12)
sing (of) canō, canere, cecinī, cantus (4)
sister soror, sorōris *f.* (7)
situation rēs, rei *f.* (9)
six sex (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
sixth sextus, -a, -um (§93)
skill ars, artis, -ium *f.* (7)
sky caelum, caelī *n.* (4)
slave servus, servī *m.* (1)
slavery servitūs, servitūtis *f.* (6)
small parvus, -a, -um (3)
small amount paulum, *paulī *n.* (11)
snatch away ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus (15)
so sīc (adv.) (5); ita (adv.) (7); tam (adv.) (13)
so great tantus, -a, -um (13)
so many tot (indeclinable adj.) (13)
so much tantum (adverbial acc.) (13)
so much tantus, -a, -um (13)
so very adeō (adv.) (14)
soldier miles, militis *m.* (6)
some aliquī, aliqua, aliquod (indef. adj.) (14); quī, qua, quod (indef. adj.) (14)
someone, something aliquis, aliquid (indef. pron.) (14); quis, quid (indef. pron.) (14); quisquam, quicquam (indef. pron.) (14)
son filius, filiī *m.* (1); nātus, nāti *m.* (10)
song carmen, carminis *n.* (6)
soon mox (adv.) (3)
sooner prius (adv.) (11)
sort genus, generis *n.* (10)
soul anima, animae *f.* (1)
(rational) soul animus, animī *m.* (2)
speak dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus (4); loquor, loquī, locūtus sum (11); for (1-tr.) (15)
speaker orātor, orātōris *m.* (10)
spear tēlum, tēlī *n.* (11)
speech orātiō, orātiōnis *f.* (10)
spend agō, agere, ēgī, āctus (4)
spirit animus, animī *m.* (2)
Spurius Spurius, Spuriī *m.* (abbreviation: Sp.) (§16)
stand stō, stāre, steti, stātūrus (10)
stand fast stō, stāre, steti, stātūrus (10)
stand in the way obstō, obstāre, obstiti, obstātūrus (15)
standard signum, signī *n.* (11)
state civitās, civitātis *f.* (7)
stay maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus (7)
step gradior, gradī, gressus sum (13)
still etiam (adv.) (7)
stir (up) moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus (2)
stock genus, generis *n.* (10)
strange novus, -a, -um (7)
street via, viae *f.* (1)
strength vīrēs, virium *f. pl.* (6)
strong validus, -a, -um (4); fortis, forte (6)
strong feelings animī, animōrum *m. pl.* (2)
strongly valdē (adv.) (5)
study studium, studiī *n.* (2)
such tālis, tāle (13)
suffer labōrō (1-intr.) (2); patior, patī, passus sum (8); perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus (10)
sufficiently satis or sat (adv.) (10)
Sulla Sulla, Sullae *m.* (§16)
summon vocō (1-tr.) (2)
sun sōl, sōlis *m.* (14)
suppose putō (1-tr.) (11)
sure certus, -a, -um (7)
surpass superō (1-tr.) (3)
surrender trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus (7)
surround cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīctus (15); circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus (15)
sweet dulcis, dulce (15)
swift celer, celeris, celere (15)
sword ferrum, ferrī *n.* (1); gladius, gladiī *m.* (1)
take (up) capiō, capere, cēpī, captus (4)
take away auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus (7)
take in exchange mūtō (1-tr.) (13)
take on incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus (13)
(natural) talent ingenium, ingenīī *n.* (7)
talk loquor, loquī, locūtus sum (11)
tall altus, -a, -um (4)
tear away rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus (15); ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus (15)
tell dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus (4)
temple templum, templī *n.* (7)
ten decem (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
tenth decimus, -a, -um (§93)
terrify terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus (7)
territory finēs, finium *m. or f.* (10)
test experior, experīrī, expertus sum (8)
than quam (conj.) (11)
thanks grātia, grātia *f.* (12)
that is, ea, id (demonstr. adj.) (4)
that ille, illa, illud (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)
that quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.) (8)
that ut (conj.) *introduces Indirect Command* (9); *quīn* (conj.) *introduces Doubting Clause* (12); *nē* (conj.) *introduces positive Fear clause* (15)
that (of yours) iste, ista, istud (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)

- that . . . not** *nē* (conj.) *introduces negative Indirect Command* (9); *quīn* (rel. adv.) *introduces negative Relative Clause of Characteristic* (10); *quīn* (rel. adv.) *introduces negative Relative Clause of Result* (14); *ut* (conj.) *introduces negative Fear clause* (15)
- the fact that** *quod* (conj.) (15)
- their (own)** *suus*, -a, -um (5)
- them** *is*, *ea*, *id* (personal pron.) (4)
- themselves** —, *suī* (reflexive pron.) (5)
- then** *mox* (adv.) (3); *tandem* (adv.) (8); *tum* or *tunc* (adv.) (12); *ibi* (adv.) (§131)
- thence** *illinc* (adv.) (§131); *inde* (adv.) (§131)
- there** *ibi* (adv.) (§131); *illīc* (adv.) (§131)
- there is need of** *opus est* (+ abl. or nom.) (10)
- therefore** *quam ob rem* (adv.) (9); *quārē* (adv.) (9); *igitur* (postpositive conj.) (11)
- thereupon** *ibi* (adv.) (§131); *inde* (adv.) (§131)
- these** *is*, *ea*, *id* (demonstr. adj.) (4)
- these** *hic*, *haec*, *hoc* (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)
- they** *is*, *ea*, *id* (personal pron.) (4)
- thing** *rēs*, *reī* *f.* (9)
- think** *cōgitō* (1-tr.) (2); *arbitror* (1-tr.) (11); *putō* (1-tr.) (11)
- third** *tertius*, -a, -um (§93)
- this** *is*, *ea*, *id* (demonstr. adj.) (4)
- this** *hic*, *haec*, *hoc* (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)
- thither** *eō* (adv.) (§131); *illūc* (adv.) (§131)
- those** *is*, *ea*, *id* (demonstr. adj.) (4)
- those** *ille*, *illa*, *illud* (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)
- those (of yours)** *iste*, *ista*, *istud* (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)
- thought** *sententia*, *sententiae* *f.* (4)
- thousand** *mille*; *pl.*, *mīlia*, *mīlium* (§93)
- thousandth** *millēsīmus*, -a, -um (§93)
- three** *trēs*, *tria* (§93)
- throng** *agmen*, *agminis* *n.* (14)
- through** *per* (prep. + acc.) (4)
- throw** *iaciō*, *iacere*, *iēcī*, *iactus* (11)
- throw out** *ēiciō*, *ēicere*, *ēiēcī*, *ēiectus* (11)
- thus** *sīc* (adv.) (5); *ita* (adv.) (7)
- Tiberius** *Tiberius*, *Tiberiī* *m.* (abbreviation: *Ti.*) (§16)
- time** *tempus*, *temporis* *n.* (9); *aetās*, *aetātis* *f.* (14)
- it makes (one) tired** *taedet*, *taedēre*, *taesum est* (15)
- Titus** *Titus*, *Titī* *m.* (abbreviation: *T.*) (§16)
- to ad** (prep. + acc.) (1)
- to be going to be fore** (11); *futūrus*, -a, -um *esse* (11)
- to here** *hūc* (adv.) (§131)
- to so great an extent** *adeō* (adv.) (14)
- to such an extent** *adeō* (adv.) (14)
- to that place** *eō* (adv.) (§131)
- to the same place** *eōdem* (adv.) (§131)
- to there** *illūc* (adv.) (§131)
- to what extent** *quid* (adverbial acc.) (13)
- to where** *quō* (rel. adv.) (9); *quō* (interrog. adv.) (12)
- too** *quoque* (adv.) (8)
- too little** *parum* (indeclinable subst.) (11); *parum* (adv.) (11)
- top (of)** *summus*, -a, -um (11)
- toward** *ad* (prep. + acc.) (1)
- town** *oppidum*, *oppidī* *n.* (1)
- tranquil** *aequus*, -a, -um (10)
- treachery** *īnsidiae*, *īnsidiārum* *f. pl.* (7)
- trick** *ars*, *artis*, -ium *f.* (7)
- trivial** *levis*, *leve* (8)
- troop** *manus*, *manūs* *f.* (9)
- troops** *cōpiae*, *cōpiārum* *f. pl.* (7)
- Troy** *Īlium*, *Īliī* *n.* (§16); *Troia*, *Troiae* *f.* (§16)
- true** *vērus*, -a, -um (7)
- trust** *crēdō*, *crēdere*, *crēdidī*, *crēditus* (+ dat.) (11)
- trust** *fidēs*, *fideī* *f.* (9)
- trustworthiness** *fidēs*, *fideī* *f.* (9)
- try** *cōnor* (1-tr.) (8); *experior*, *experīrī*, *expertus sum* (8)
- Tullius Cicero** (M.) *Tullius Cicerō*, (M.) *Tullīi Cicerōnis* *m.* (§63)
- two** *duo*, *duae*, *duo* (§93)
- ugly** *turpis*, *turpe* (15)
- uncertain** *incertus*, -a, -um (7)
- under** *sub* (prep. + abl.) (6); *sub* (prep. + acc.) (6)
- understand** *intellegō*, *intellegere*, *intellēxī*, *intellēctus* (6)
- uneven** *inīquus*, -a, -um (10)
- unfortunate** *īnfēlix*, *īnfēlicis* (6)
- unfriendly** *inimīcus*, -a, -um (+ dat.) (3)
- ungrateful** *ingrātus*, -a, -um (13)
- unhappy** *īnfēlix*, *īnfēlicis* (6)
- unjust** *inīquus*, -a, -um (10)
- unless** *nisi* (conj.) (5)
- unlike** *dissimilis*, *dissimile* (+ gen. or dat.) (11)
- unlucky** *īnfēlix*, *īnfēlicis* (6)
- unpleasant** *ingrātus*, -a, -um (13)
- unreliable** *incertus*, -a, -um (7)
- unsure** *incertus*, -a, -um (7)
- until** *dōnec* (conj.) (13); *dum* (conj.) (13)
- unworthy (of)** *indignus*, -a, -um (+ abl.) (12)
- up to** *sub* (prep. + acc.) (6)
- urge** *hortor* (1-tr.) (9)
- us** *nōs*, *nostrum*/*nostrī* (personal pron.) (4)
- use** *ūtor*, *ūtī*, *ūsus sum* (+ abl.) (10)
- utter** *iaciō*, *iacere*, *iēcī*, *iactus* (11)
- Valerius Catullus** (C.) *Valerius Catullus*, (C.) *Valeriī Catullī* *m.* (§16)
- value** *aestimō* (1-tr.) (13)
- value** *pretium*, *pretiī* *n.* (13)
- vast** *ingēns*, *ingentis* (6)
- Venus** *Venus*, *Veneris* *f.* (§63)

- Vergilius Maro (Vergil)** P. Vergilius Marō, P. Vergiliū Marōnis *m.* (§63)
very ipse, ipsa, ipsum (5)
(so) very adeō (adv.) (14)
very much plurimum (adverbial acc.) (13)
Vesta Vesta, Vestae *f.* (§63)
villainy scelus, sceleris *n.* (13)
violence vīs, —, -ium *f.* (6)
virtue virtūs, virtūtis *f.* (7)
voice vōx, vōcis *f.* (7)
Vulcan Vulcānus, Vulcāni *m.* (§63)
- to wage war** bellum gerere (4)
wait moror (1-tr.) (13)
wait for ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) (13)
walk ambulō (1-intr.) (2); gradior, gradī, gressus sum (13)
wall mūrus, mūrī *m.* (11)
(city) walls moenia, moenium *n. pl.* (6)
wander errō (1-intr.) (2)
want cupiō, cupere, cupiī/cupīvī, cupītus (7); volō, velle, voluī, — (12)
want more mālō, mālle, mālūi, — (12)
war bellum, bellī *n.* (1)
to wage war bellum gerere (4)
warn moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus (9)
way via, viae *f.* (1); modus, modī *m.* (9)
we nōs, nostrum/nostrī (personal pron.) (4)
weapon tēlum, tēli *n.* (11)
weapons arma, armōrum *n. pl.* (2)
well bene (adv.) (5)
well-known nōtus, -a, -um (10)
west occidēns, occidentis *m.* (14)
what quī, quae, quod (interrog. adj.) (8)
what quis, quid (interrog. pron.) (8)
what sort of quālis, quāle (13)
when ubi (interrog. adv.) (5)
when ubi (conj.) (5); ut (conj.) (5); cum (conj.) (12)
whence unde (rel. adv.) (9); unde (interrog. adv.) (12)
where ubi (interrog. adv.) (5); ubi (rel. adv.) (9)
whether num (adv.) *introduces an Indirect Question* (12)
whether an (conj.) *introduces an Indirect Question* (12)
whether utrum (interrog. particle) *introduces an Indirect Question* (12)
whether . . . or . . . utrum . . . an . . . (12); -ne . . . an . . . (12); — . . . an . . . (12)
which quī, quae, quod (interrog. adj.) (8)
which quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.) (8)
which (of two) uter, utra, utrum (9)
while dōnec (conj.) (13); dum (conj.) (13)
- whither** quō (rel. adv.) (9); quō (interrog. adv.) (12)
who quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.) (8); quis, quid (interrog. pron.) (8)
who . . . not quīn (rel. adv.) *introduces negative Relative Clause of Characteristic* (10); *introduces negative Relative Clause of Result* (14)
whole tōtus, -a, -um (9)
why cūr (interrog. adv.) (2); quam ob rem (interrog. adv.) (9); quārē (interrog. adv.) (9); quid (adverbial acc.) (13)
wicked impius, -a, -um (5)
wicked deed scelus, sceleris *n.* (13)
wife fēmina, fēminae *f.* (1)
win capiō, capere, cēpī, captus (4); *intr.*, vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus (7)
wisdom sapientia, sapientiae *f.* (2)
wise sapiēns, sapientis (11)
wish volō, velle, voluī, — (12)
to wish ill male velle (12)
to wish well bene velle (12)
with cum (prep. + abl.) (1)
with difficulty difficiliter *or* difficulter (adv.) (6)
withdraw cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum (5)
without sine (prep. + abl.) (3)
woman fēmina, fēminae *f.* (1)
word verbum, verbī *n.* (1); dictum, dictī *n.* (6); vōx, vōcis *f.* (7)
work labōrō (1-intr.) (2)
work labor, labōris *m.* (10); opus, operis *n.* (10)
world orbis terrārum (15)
worse peior, peius (11); peius (adv.) (11)
worst pessimus, -a, -um (11); pessimē (adv.) (11)
worthy (of) dignus, -a, -um (+ abl.) (12)
wound vulnus, vulneris *n.* (13)
wrath īra, īrae *f.* (2)
wretched miser, misera, miserum (3)
write scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus (4)
- year** annus, annī *m.* (9)
yield cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum (5)
you tū, tuī (personal pron.) (4)
you (pl.) vōs, vestrum/vestrī (personal pron.) (4)
your tuus, -a, -um (4)
your (pl.) vester, vestra, vestrum (4)
your (own) tuus, -a, -um (5)
your (pl.) (own) vester, vestra, vestrum (5)
yours tuus, -a, -um (4)
yours (pl.) vester, vestra, vestrum (4)
yourself —, tuī (reflexive pron.) (5)
yourselves —, vestrum/vestrī (reflexive pron.) (5)
- zeal** studium, studiī *n.* (2)